

# tagpdf – A package to experiment with pdf tagging<sup>\*</sup>

Ulrike Fischer<sup>†</sup>

Released 2021-08-27

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Initialization and test if pdfmanagement is active.</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Package options</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Packages</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Temporary code</b>	<b>6</b>
4.1	a LastPage label . . . . .	7
<b>5</b>	<b>Variables</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Variants of l3 commands</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Setup label attributes</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Label commands</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Commands to fill seq and prop</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>General tagging commands</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Keys for tagpdfsetup</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>loading of engine/more dependent code</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>I</b>	<b>The tagpdf-checks module</b>	
	<b>Messages and check code</b>	
	<b>Part of the tagpdf package</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Commands</b>	<b>13</b>

---

<sup>\*</sup>This file describes v0.92, last revised 2021-08-27.

<sup>†</sup>E-mail: [fischer@troubleshooting-tex.de](mailto:fischer@troubleshooting-tex.de)

<b>2</b>	<b>Description of log messages</b>	<b>13</b>
2.1	\ShowTagging command . . . . .	13
2.2	Messages in checks and commands . . . . .	13
2.3	Messages from the ptagging code . . . . .	14
2.4	Warning messages from the lua-code . . . . .	14
2.5	Info messages from the lua-code . . . . .	14
<b>3</b>	<b>Messages</b>	<b>15</b>
3.1	Messages related to mc-chunks . . . . .	15
3.2	Messages related to mc-chunks . . . . .	16
3.3	Attributes . . . . .	17
3.4	Roles . . . . .	17
3.5	Miscellaneous . . . . .	17
<b>4</b>	<b>Retrieving data</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>User conditionals</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Internal checks</b>	<b>18</b>
6.1	checks for active tagging . . . . .	18
6.2	Checks related to stuctures . . . . .	19
6.3	Checks related to roles . . . . .	20
6.4	Check related to mc-chunks . . . . .	20
6.5	Checks related to the state of MC on a page or in a split stream . . . . .	23

<b>II</b>	<b>The tagpdf-user module</b>	
	Code related to L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X2e user commands and document commands	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>25</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Setup commands</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Commands related to mc-chunks</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Commands related to structures</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Debugging</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Extension commands</b>	<b>26</b>
5.1	Fake space . . . . .	26
5.2	Paratagging . . . . .	26
5.3	Header and footer . . . . .	27
5.4	Link tagging . . . . .	27
<b>6</b>	<b>User commands and extensions of document commands</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Setup and preamble commands</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Commands for the mc-chunks</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Commands for the structure</b>	<b>28</b>

<b>10</b>	<b>Debugging</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Commands to extend document commands</b>	<b>32</b>
11.1	Document structure . . . . .	32
11.2	Fake space . . . . .	32
11.3	Paratagging . . . . .	33
11.4	Header and footer . . . . .	35
11.5	Links . . . . .	36
<b>III The tagpdf-tree module</b>		
Commands trees and main dictionaries		
Part of the tagpdf package		<b>38</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Trees, pdfmanagement and finalization code</b>	<b>38</b>
1.1	Catalog: MarkInfo and StructTreeRoot . . . . .	38
1.2	Writing structure elements . . . . .	39
1.3	ParentTree . . . . .	39
1.4	Rolemap dictionary . . . . .	42
1.5	Classmap dictionary . . . . .	42
1.6	Namespaces . . . . .	43
1.7	Finishing the structure . . . . .	44
1.8	StructParents entry for Page . . . . .	44
<b>IV The tagpdf-mc-shared module</b>		
Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), code shared by all modes		
Part of the tagpdf package		<b>45</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Public Commands</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Public keys</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Marked content code – shared</b>	<b>46</b>
3.1	Variables and counters . . . . .	47
3.2	Functions . . . . .	48
3.3	Keys . . . . .	50
<b>V The tagpdf-mc-generic module</b>		
Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), generic mode		
Part of the tagpdf package		<b>52</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Marked content code – generic mode</b>	<b>52</b>
1.1	Variables . . . . .	52
1.2	Functions . . . . .	53
1.3	Looking at MC marks in boxes . . . . .	56
1.4	Keys . . . . .	62

<b>VI</b>	<b>The <code>tagpdf-mc-luacode</code> module</b>	
	Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), luamode-specific	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>64</b>
1	Marked content code – luamode code	<b>64</b>
1.1	Commands . . . . .	65
1.2	Key definitions . . . . .	69
<b>VII</b>	<b>The <code>tagpdf-struct</code> module</b>	
	Commands to create the structure	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>72</b>
1	Public Commands	<b>72</b>
2	Public keys	<b>72</b>
2.1	Keys for the structure commands . . . . .	72
2.2	Setup keys . . . . .	74
3	Variables	<b>74</b>
3.1	Variables used by the keys . . . . .	76
4	Commands	<b>77</b>
4.1	Initialization of the StructTreeRoot . . . . .	77
4.2	Handlings kids . . . . .	78
5	Keys	<b>83</b>
6	User commands	<b>86</b>
7	Attributes and attribute classes	<b>89</b>
7.1	Variables . . . . .	89
7.2	Commands and keys . . . . .	89
<b>VIII</b>	<b>The <code>tagpdf-luatex.def</code></b>	
	Driver for luatex	
	Part of the tagpdf package	<b>92</b>
1	Loading the lua	<b>92</b>
2	Logging functions	<b>96</b>
3	Helper functions	<b>98</b>
3.1	Retrieve data functions . . . . .	98
3.2	Functions to insert the pdf literals . . . . .	100
4	Function for the real space chars	<b>101</b>
5	Function for the tagging	<b>104</b>
6	Parenttree	<b>108</b>

<b>IX The tagpdf-roles module</b>	
<b>Tags, roles and namesspace code</b>	
Part of the tagpdf package	<b>110</b>
<b>1 Code related to roles and structure names</b>	<b>110</b>
1.1 Variables . . . . .	110
1.2 Namesspaces . . . . .	111
1.3 Data . . . . .	112
1.4 Adding new tags and rolemapping . . . . .	118
1.4.1 pdf 1.7 and earlier . . . . .	118
1.4.2 The pdf 2.0 version . . . . .	119
1.5 Key-val user interface . . . . .	120
<b>X The tagpdf-space module</b>	
<b>Code related to real space chars</b>	
Part of the tagpdf package	<b>122</b>
<b>1 Code for interword spaces</b>	<b>122</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>124</b>

# 1 Initialization and test if pdfmanagement is active.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 {*package}
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 { A package to experiment with pdf tagging }
5
6 \bool_if:nF
7 {
8     \bool_lazy_and_p:nn
9     {\cs_if_exist_p:N \pdfmanagement_if_active_p:}
10    { \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: }
11 }
12 { %error for now, perhaps warning later.
13     \PackageError{tagpdf}
14     {
15         PDF~resource~management~is~no~active!\MessageBreak
16         tagpdf~will~no~work.
17     }
18 }
19 { Activate~it~with \MessageBreak
20   \string\RequirePackage{pdfmanagement-testphase}\MessageBreak
21   \string\DeclareDocumentMetadata{<options>}\MessageBreak
22   before~\string\documentclass
23 }
24 }
```

We map the internal module name “tag” to “tagpdf” in messages.

```
25 \prop_if_exist:NT \g_msg_module_name_prop
26 {
27     \prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { tag }{ tagpdf }
28 }
```

## 2 Package options

There are only two options to switch for luatex between generic and luamode, TODO try to get rid of them.

```
29 \bool_new:N\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
30 \DeclareOption{luamode}{\sys_if_engine_luatex:T{\bool_gset_true:N\g__tag_mode_lua_bool}}
31 \DeclareOption{genericmode}{\bool_gset_false:N\g__tag_mode_lua_bool}
32 \ExecuteOptions{luamode}
33 \ProcessOptions
```

## 3 Packages

We need the temporary version of l3ref until this is in the kernel.

```
34 \RequirePackage{l3ref-tmp}
```

## 4 Temporary code

This is code which will be removed when proper support exists in LaTeX

## 4.1 a LastPage label

See also issue #2 in Accessible-xref

```
\__tag_lastpagelabel:  
35 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_lastpagelabel:  
36 {  
37     \legacy_if:nT { @filesw }  
38     {  
39         \exp_args:NNnx \exp_args:NNx\iow_now:Nn \auxout  
40         {  
41             \token_to_str:N \newlabeldata  
42             {\__tag_LastPage}  
43             {  
44                 {abspage} { \int_use:N \g_shipout_READONLY_int }  
45                 {tagmcabs}{ \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }  
46             }  
47         }  
48     }  
49 }  
50  
51 \AddToHook{enddocument/afterlastpage}  
52 {\__tag_lastpagelabel:}  
  
(End definition for \__tag_lastpagelabel:.)
```

\ref\_value:nnn This allows to locally set a default value if the label or the attribute doesn't exist. See issue #4 in Accessible-xref.

```
\ref_value:nnn{\label}{attribute}{Fallback default}  
53 \cs_if_exist:NF \ref_value:nnn  
54 {  
55     \cs_new:Npn \ref_value:nnn #1#2#3  
56     {  
57         \exp_args:Nee  
58         \__ref_value:nnn  
59         { \tl_to_str:n {#1} } { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } {#3}  
60     }  
61     \cs_new:Npn \__ref_value:nnn #1#2#3  
62     {  
63         \tl_if_exist:cTF { g__ref_label_ #1 _ #2 _tl }  
64         { \tl_use:c { g__ref_label_ #1 _ #2 _tl } }  
65         {  
66             #3  
67         }  
68     }  
69 }
```

(End definition for \ref\_value:nnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

## 5 Variables

```
\l__tag_tmpa_tl A few temporary variables  
\l__tag_tmpa_str  
\l__tag_tmpa_prop  
\l__tag_tmpa_seq  
\l__tag_tmpb_seq  
\l__tag_tmpa_clist  
\l__tag_tmpa_int  
\l__tag_tmpa_box  
\l__tag_tmpb_box
```

```

70 \tl_new:N    \l__tag_tmpa_tl
71 \str_new:N   \l__tag_tmpa_str
72 \prop_new:N  \l__tag_tmpa_prop
73 \seq_new:N   \l__tag_tmpa_seq
74 \seq_new:N   \l__tag_tmpb_seq
75 \clist_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_clist
76 \int_new:N   \l__tag_tmpa_int
77 \box_new:N   \l__tag_tmpa_box
78 \box_new:N   \l__tag_tmpb_box

```

(End definition for `\l__tag_tmpa_tl` and others.)

Attribute lists for the label command. We have a list for mc-related labels, and one for structures.

```

\c__tag_refmc_clist
\c__tag_refstruct_clist
79 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_refmc_clist {tagabspage,tagmcabs,tagmcid}
80 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_refstruct_clist {tagstruct,tagstructobj}

```

(End definition for `\c__tag_refmc_clist` and `\c__tag_refstruct_clist`.)

`\l__tag_loglevel_int`

This integer hold the log-level and so allows to control the messages. TODO: a list which log-level shows what is needed. The current behaviour is quite ad-hoc.

```
81 \int_new:N \l__tag_loglevel_int
```

(End definition for `\l__tag_loglevel_int`.)

```

\g__tag_active_space_bool
\g__tag_active_mc_bool
\g__tag_active_tree_bool
\g__tag_active_struct_bool

```

These booleans should help to control the global behaviour of tagpdf. Ideally it should more or less do nothing if all are false. The space-boolean controloes the interword space code, the mc-boolean activates `\tag_mc_begin:n`, the tree-boolean activates writing the finish code and the pdfmanagement related commands, the struct-boolean activates the storing of the structure data. In a normal document all should be active, the split is only there for debugging purpose. Also we assume currently that they are set only at begin document. But if some control passing over groups are needed they could be perhaps used in a document too. TODO: check if they are used everywhere as needed and as wanted.

```

82 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
83 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_mc_bool
84 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_tree_bool
85 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_struct_bool

```

(End definition for `\g__tag_active_space_bool` and others.)

```

\l__tag_active_mc_bool
\l__tag_active_struct_bool

```

These booleans should help to control the *local* behaviour of tagpdf. In some cases it could e.g. be necessary to stop tagging completely. As local booleans they respect groups. TODO: check if they are used everywhere as needed and as wanted.

```

86 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
87 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
88 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
89 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool

```

(End definition for `\l__tag_active_mc_bool` and `\l__tag_active_struct_bool`.)

\g\_\_tag\_tagunmarked\_bool This boolean controls if the code should try to automatically tag parts not in mc-chunk. It is currently only used in luamode. It would be possible to use it in generic mode, but this would create quite a lot empty artifact mc-chunks.

```
90 \bool_new:N \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool
```

(End definition for \g\_\_tag\_tagunmarked\_bool.)

## 6 Variants of l3 commands

```
91 \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \pdf_object_if_exist:n {e}{T,F}
92 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdf_object_ref:n {e}
93 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn {nnx}
94 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn {nxx,oxx}
95 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput:Nnn {Nxx}
96 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {Nxx}
97 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \ref_label:nn { nv }
98 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_split:Nnn{Nne}
99 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_set_convert:Nnnn {Nonn, Noon, Nnon }
```

## 7 Setup label attributes

**tagstruct** This are attributes used by the label/ref system. With structures we store the structure number **tagstruct** and the object reference **tagstructobj**. The second is needed to be able to reference a structure which hasn't been created yet. The alternative would be to create the object in such cases, but then we would have to check the object existence all the time.

With mc-chunks we store the absolute page number **tagabspage**, the absolute id **tagmcabc**, and the id on the page **tagmcid**.

```
100 \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn { tagstruct } {0} { now }
101   { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
102 \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn { tagstructobj } {} { now }
103   {
104     \pdf_object_if_exist:eT {__tag/struct/\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
105     {
106       \pdf_object_ref:e{__tag/struct/\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
107     }
108   }
109 \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn { tagabspage } {0} { shipout }
110   { \int_use:N \g_shipout_READONLY_int }
111 \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn { tagmcabs } {0} { now }
112   { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
113 \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn {tagmcid } {0} { now }
114   { \int_use:N \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int }
```

(End definition for tagstruct and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)

## 8 Label commands

\\_\_tag\_ref\_label:nn A version of \ref\_label:nn to set a label which takes a keyword **mc** or **struct** to call the relevant lists. TODO: check if \@bsphack and \@esphack make sense here.

```
115 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_ref_label:nn #1 #2 %#1 label, #2 name of list mc or struct
```

```

116  {
117    \@bsphack
118    \ref_label:nv {#1}{c__tag_ref#2_clist}
119    \@esphack
120  }
121 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_ref_label:nn {en}

(End definition for \__tag_ref_label:nn.)
```

\\_\_tag\_ref\_value:nnn A local version to retrieve the value. It is a direct wrapper, but to keep naming consistent .... It uses the variant defined temporarily above.

```

122 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_ref_value:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 label, #2 attribute, #3 default
123  {
124    \ref_value:nnn {#1}{#2}{#3}
125  }
126 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_ref_value:nnn {enn}
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_ref\_value:nnn.)

\\_\_tag\_ref\_value\_lastpage:nn A command to retrieve the lastpage label, this will be adapted when there is a proper, kernel lastpage label.

```

127 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn #1 #2
128  {
129    \ref_value:nnn {\__tag_LastPage}{#1}{#2}
130  }
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_ref\_value\_lastpage:nn.)

## 9 Commands to fill seq and prop

With most engines these are simply copies of the expl3 commands, but luatex will overwrite them, to store the data also in lua tables.

```

\__tag_prop_new:N
\__tag_seq_new:N 131 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_new:N      \prop_new:N
\__tag_prop_gput:Nnn 132 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_new:N      \seq_new:N
\__tag_seq_gput_right:Nnn 133 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn      \prop_gput:Nnn
\__tag_seq_item:cn 134 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \seq_gput_right:Nn
\__tag_prop_item:cn 135 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_item:cn      \seq_item:cn
\__tag_seq_show:N 136 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_item:cn      \prop_item:cn
\__tag_prop_show:N 137 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_show:N      \seq_show:N
\__tag_prop_show:N 138 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_show:N      \prop_show:N
139
140 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn      { NxN , Nxx , Nnx , cnn , cxn , cnx , cno }
141 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn { Nx , No , cn , cx }
142 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_new:N { c }
143 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_new:N { c }
144 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_show:N { c }
145 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_show:N { c }

(End definition for \__tag_prop_new:N and others.)
```

## 10 General tagging commands

\tag\_stop\_group\_begin: We need a command to stop tagging in some places. This simply switches the two local booleans.

```

146 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_stop_group_begin:
147 {
148     \group_begin:
149     \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
150     \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
151 }
152 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_stop_group_end: \group_end:
```

*(End definition for \tag\_stop\_group\_begin: and \tag\_stop\_group\_end:. These functions are documented on page ??.)*

## 11 Keys for tagpdfsetup

TODO: the log-levels must be sorted

**activate-space** Keys to (globally) activate tagging. **activate-space** activates the additional parsing needed for interword spaces. It is not documented, the parsing is currently implicitly activated by the known key **interwordspace**, as the code will perhaps move to some other place, now that it is better separated.

```

153 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
154 {
155     activate-space .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_space_bool,
156     activate-mc .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_mc_bool,
157     activate-tree .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_tree_bool,
158     activate-struct .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_struct_bool,
159     activate-all .meta:n =
160         {activate-mc,activate-tree,activate-struct},
161 }
```

*(End definition for activate-space and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)*

**log** The **log** takes currently the values **none**, **v**, **vv**, **vvv**, **all**. The description of the log levels is in tagpdf-checks.

```

162     log .choice:,,
163     log / none .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 0 }},
164     log / v .code:n =
165     {
166         \int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 1 }
167         \cs_set_protected:Nn \__tag_check_typeout_v:n { \iow_term:x {##1} }
168     },
169     log / vv .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 2 }},
170     log / vvv .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 3 }},
171     log / all .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 10 }},
```

*(End definition for log. This function is documented on page ??.)*

**tagunmarked** This key allows to set if (in luamode) unmarked text should be marked up as artifact. The initial value is true.

```

172     tagunmarked .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool,
173     tagunmarked .initial:n = true,
```

*(End definition for tagunmarked. This function is documented on page ??.)*

**tabsorder** This sets the tabsorder one a page. The values are **row**, **column**, **structure** (default) or **none**. Currently this is set more or less globally. More finer controll can be added if needed.

```
174     tabsorder      .choice:,  
175     tabsorder / row      .code:n =  
176         \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/R},  
177     tabsorder / column    .code:n =  
178         \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/C},  
179     tabsorder / structure .code:n =  
180         \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/S},  
181     tabsorder / none      .code:n =  
182         \pdfmanagement_remove:nn {Page} {Tabs},  
183     tabsorder      .initial:n = structure,  
184     uncompress      .code:n = { \pdf_uncompress: },  
185 }
```

*(End definition for tabsorder. This function is documented on page ??.)*

## 12 loading of engine/more dependent code

```
186 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T  
187 {  
188     \file_input:n {tagpdf-luatex.def}  
189 }  
190 </package>  
  
191 {*mcloading}  
192 \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool  
193 {  
194     \RequirePackage {tagpdf-mc-code-lua}  
195 }  
196 {  
197     \RequirePackage {tagpdf-mc-code-generic} %  
198 }  
199 </mcloading>
```

## Part I

# The **tagpdf-checks** module

## Messages and check code

### Part of the tagpdf package

## 1 Commands

---

`\tag_if_active_p:` \* This command tests if tagging is active. It only gives true if all tagging has been activated, `\tag_if_active:TF` \* and if tagging hasn't been stopped locally.

---

`\tag_get:n` \* `\tag_get:n{<keyword>}`

This is a generic command to retrieve data. Currently the only sensible values for the argument `<keyword>` are `mc_tag` and `struct_tag`.

## 2 Description of log messages

### 2.1 \ShowTagging command

Argument	type	note
<code>\ShowTaggingmc-data = num</code>	log+term	lua-only
<code>\ShowTaggingmc-current</code>	log+term	
<code>\ShowTaggingstruck-stack= [log show]</code>	log or term+stop	

### 2.2 Messages in checks and commands

command	message	action
<code>\@C_check_structure_has_tag:n</code>	struct-missing-tag	error
<code>\@C_check_structure_tag:N</code>	role-unknown-tag	warning
<code>\@C_check_info_closing_struct:n</code>	struct-show-closing	info
<code>\@C_check_no_open_struct:</code>	struct-faulty-nesting	error
<code>\@C_check_struct_used:n</code>	struct-used-twice	warning
<code>\@C_check_add_tag_role:nn</code>	role-missing, role-tag, role-unknown	warning, info (>0), warning
<code>\@C_check_mc_if_nested:,</code>	mc-nested	warning
<code>\@C_check_mc_if_open:</code>	mc-not-open	warning
<code>\@C_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn</code>	mc-pushed, mc-popped	info (2), info+seq_log (>2)
<code>\@C_check_mc_tag:N</code>	mc-tag-missing, role-unknown-tag	error (missing), warning (unknown).
<code>\@C_check_mc_used:n</code>	mc-used-twice	warning
<code>\@C_check_show_MCID_by_page:</code>		
<code>\tag_mc_use:n</code>	mc-label-unknown, mc-used-twice	warning
<code>\role_add_tag:nn</code>	new-tag	info (>0)
	sys-no-interwordspace	warning
<code>\@C_struct_write_obj:n</code>	struct-no-objnum	error
<code>\tag_struct_begin:n</code>	struct-faulty-nesting	error
<code>\@C_struct_insert_annotation:nn</code>	struct-faulty-nesting	error
<code>tag_struct_use:n</code>	struct-label-unknown	warning
<code>attribute-class, attribute</code>	attr-unknown	error
<code>\@C_tree_fill_parenttree:</code>	tree-mcid-index-wrong	warning TODO: should trigger a standard rerun
<code>in enddocument/info-hook</code>	para-hook-count-wrong	error (warning?)

## 2.3 Messages from the ptagging code

A few messages are issued in generic mode from the code which reinserts missing TMB/TME. This is currently done if log-level is larger than zero. TODO: reconsider log-level and messages when this code settles down.

## 2.4 Warning messages from the lua-code

The messages are triggered if the log-level is at least equal to the number.

message	log-level	remark
WARN TAG-NOT-TAGGED:	1	
WARN TAG-OPEN-MC:	1	
WARN SHIPOUT-MC-OPEN:	1	
WARN SHIPOUT-UPS:	0	shouldn't happen
WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-MISSING:	0	shouldn't happen
WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-NO-KIDS:	2	e.g. from empty hbox

## 2.5 Info messages from the lua-code

The messages are triggered if the log-level is at least equal to the number. TAG messages are from the traversing function, TEX from code used in the tagpdf-mc module. PARENTTREE is the code building the parenttree.

message	log-level	remark
INFO SHIPOUT-INSERT-LAST-EMC	3	finish of shipout code
INFO SPACE-FUNCTION-FONT	3	interwordspace code
INFO TAG-ABSPAGE	3	
INFO TAG-ARGS	4	
INFO TAG-ENDHEAD	4	
INFO TAG-ENDHEAD	4	
INFO TAG-HEAD	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-ARTIFACT	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-BDC	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-EMC	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-TAG	3	
INFO TAG-KERN-SUBTYPE	4	
INFO TAG-MATH-SUBTYPE	4	
INFO TAG-MC-COMPARE	4	
INFO TAG-MC-INTO-PAGE	3	
INFO TAG-NEW-MC-NODE	4	
INFO TAG-NODE	3	
INFO TAG-NO-HEAD	3	
INFO TAG-NOT-TAGGED	2	replaced by artifact
INFO TAG-QUITTING-BOX	4	
INFO TAG-STORE-MC-KID	4	
INFO TAG-TRAVERSING-BOX	3	
INFO TAG-USE-ACTUALTEXT	3	
INFO TAG-USE-ALT	3	
INFO TAG-USE-RAW	3	
INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID	3	

message	log-level	remark
INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID-TEST	4	
INFO TEX-MC-INTO-STRUCT	3	
INFO TEX-STORE-MC-DATA	3	
INFO TEX-STORE-MC-KID	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-CHUNKS	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NO-DATA	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NUM	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-STRUCT-OBJREF	4	

```

1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-checks-code} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to checks, conditionals, debugging and messages}
5 </header>
```

## 3 Messages

### 3.1 Messages related to mc-chunks

- mc-nested** This message is issued if a mc is opened before the previous has been closed. This is not relevant for luamode, as the attributes don't care about this. It is used in the `\@@_check_mc_if_nested:` test.

```

6 <*package>
7 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-nested} { nested~marked~content~found~~~mcid~#1 }
```

(End definition for `mc-nested`. This function is documented on page ??.)

- mc-tag-missing** If the tag is missing

```

8 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-tag-missing} { required~tag~missing~~~mcid~#1 }
```

(End definition for `mc-tag-missing`. This function is documented on page ??.)

- mc-label-unknown** If the label of a mc that is used in another place is not known (yet) or has been undefined as the mc was already used.

```

9 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-label-unknown}
10 { label~#1~unknown~or~has~been~already~used.\\
11 Either~rerun~or~remove~one~of~the~uses. }
```

(End definition for `mc-label-unknown`. This function is documented on page ??.)

- mc-used-twice** An mc-chunk can be inserted only in one structure. This indicates wrong coding and so should at least give a warning.

```

12 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-used-twice} { mc~#1~has~been~already~used }
```

(End definition for `mc-used-twice`. This function is documented on page ??.)

- mc-not-open** This is issued if a `\tag_mc_end:` is issued wrongly, wrong coding.

```

13 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-not-open} { there~is~no~mc~to~end~at~#1 }
```

(End definition for `mc-not-open`. This function is documented on page ??.)

**mc-pushed** Informational messages about mc-pushing.

```

14 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-pushed} { #1~has~been~pushed~to~the~mc~stack}
15 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-popped} { #1~has~been~removed~from~the~mc~stack }

```

(End definition for `mc-pushed` and `mc-popped`. These functions are documented on page ??.)

**mc-current** Informational messages about current mc state.

```

16 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-current}
17   { current-MC:~
18     \bool_if:NTF\g__tag_in_mc_bool
19       {abscnt=\_tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,~tag=\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl}
20       {no-MC-open,~current-abscnt=\_tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:"}
21   }

```

(End definition for `mc-current`. This function is documented on page ??.)

### 3.2 Messages related to mc-chunks

**struct-no-objnum** Should not happen ...

```

22 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-no-objnum} { objnum~missing~for~structure~#1 }

```

(End definition for `struct-no-objnum`. This function is documented on page ??.)

**struct-faulty-nesting** This indicates that there is somewhere one `\tag_struct_end`: too much. This should be normally an error.

```

23 \msg_new:nnn { tag }
24   {struct-faulty-nesting}
25   { there~is~no~open~structure~on~the~stack }

```

(End definition for `struct-faulty-nesting`. This function is documented on page ??.)

**struct-missing-tag** A structure must have a tag.

```

26 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-missing-tag} { a~structure~must~have~a~tag! }

```

(End definition for `struct-missing-tag`. This function is documented on page ??.)

**struct-used-twice**

```

27 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice}
28   { structure~with~label~#1~has~already~been~used}

```

(End definition for `struct-used-twice`. This function is documented on page ??.)

**struct-label-unknown** label is unknown, typically needs a rerun.

```

29 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-label-unknown}
30   { structure~with~label~#1~is~unknown~rerun}

```

(End definition for `struct-label-unknown`. This function is documented on page ??.)

**struct-show-closing** Informational message shown if log-mode is high enough

```

31 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-show-closing}
32   { closing~structure~#1~tagged~\prop_item:cn{g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{S} }

```

(End definition for `struct-show-closing`. This function is documented on page ??.)

### 3.3 Attributes

Not much yet, as attributes aren't used so much.

`attr-unknown`

33 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {attr-unknown} { attribute~#1~is~unknown}

*(End definition for attr-unknown. This function is documented on page ??.)*

### 3.4 Roles

`role-missing`

Warning message if either the tag or the role is missing

`role-unknown`

34 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {role-missing} { tag~#1~has~no~role~assigned }

`role-unknown-tag`

35 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown} { role~#1~is~not~known }

36 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-tag} { tag~#1~is~not~known }

*(End definition for role-missing, role-unknown, and role-unknown-tag. These functions are documented on page ??.)*

`role-tag` Info messages.

`new-tag`

37 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {role-tag} { mapping~tag~#1~to~role~#2 }

38 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {new-tag} { adding~new~tag~#1 }

*(End definition for role-tag and new-tag. These functions are documented on page ??.)*

### 3.5 Miscellaneous

`tree-mcid-index-wrong`

Used in the tree code, typically indicates the document must be rerun.

39 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {tree-mcid-index-wrong}

40 {something~is~wrong~with~the~mcid--rerun}

*(End definition for tree-mcid-index-wrong. This function is documented on page ??.)*

`sys-no-interwordspace`

Currently only pdflatex and lualatex have some support for real spaces.

41 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {sys-no-interwordspace}

42 {engine/output~mode~#1~doesn't~support~the~interword~spaces}

*(End definition for sys-no-interwordspace. This function is documented on page ??.)*

`\_tag_check_typeout_v:n`

A simple logging function. By default it gobbles its argument, but the log-keys sets it to typeout.

43 \cs\_set\_eq:NN \\_tag\_check\_typeout\_v:n \use\_none:n

*(End definition for \\_tag\_check\_typeout\_v:n.)*

`para-hook-count-wrong`

At the end of the document we check if the count of para-begin and para-end is identical. If not we issue a warning: this is normally a coding error and breaks the structure.

44 \msg\_new:nnnn { tag } {para-hook-count-wrong}

45 {The~number~of~automatic~begin~(#1)~and~end~(#2)~para~hooks~differ!}

46 {This~quite~probably~a~coding~error~and~the~structure~will~be~wrong!}

*(End definition for para-hook-count-wrong. This function is documented on page ??.)*

## 4 Retrieving data

**\tag\_get:n** This retrieves some data. This is a generic command to retrieve data. Currently the only sensible values for the argument are `mc_tag` and `struct_tag`.

```
47 \cs_new:Npn \tag_get:n #1 { \use:c {__tag_get_data_#1:} }
```

(End definition for `\tag_get:n`. This function is documented on page 13.)

## 5 User conditionals

**\tag\_if\_active\_p:** This is a test if tagging is active. This allows packages to add conditional code. The test is true if all booleans, the global and the two local one are true.

```
48 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tag_if_active: { p , T , TF, F }
49 {
50     \bool_lazy_all:nTF
51     {
52         {\g__tag_active_struct_bool}
53         {\g__tag_active_mc_bool}
54         {\g__tag_active_tree_bool}
55         {\l__tag_active_struct_bool}
56         {\l__tag_active_mc_bool}
57     }
58     {
59         \prg_return_true:
60     }
61     {
62         \prg_return_false:
63     }
64 }
```

(End definition for `\tag_if_active:TF`. This function is documented on page 13.)

## 6 Internal checks

These are checks used in various places in the code.

### 6.1 checks for active tagging

**\\_\_tag\_check\_if\_active\_mc:TF** Structures must have a tag, so we check if the S entry is in the property. It is an error if this is missing. The argument is a number.

```
65 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_active_mc: {T,F,TF}
66 {
67     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF { \g__tag_active_mc_bool } { \l__tag_active_mc_bool }
68     {
69         \prg_return_true:
70     }
71     {
72         \prg_return_false:
73     }
74 }
75 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_active_struct: {T,F,TF}
```

```

76   {
77     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF { \g__tag_active_struct_bool } { \l__tag_active_struct_bool }
78     {
79       \prg_return_true:
80     }
81     {
82       \prg_return_false:
83     }
84   }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_check_if_active_mc:TF` and `\_tag_check_if_active_struct:TF`.)

## 6.2 Checks related to structures

`\_tag_check_structure_has_tag:n`

Structures must have a tag, so we check if the S entry is in the property. It is an error if this is missing. The argument is a number. The tests for existence and type is split in structures, as the tags are stored differently to the mc case.

```

85 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_check_structure_has_tag:n #1 %#1 struct num
86   {
87     \prop_if_in:cnF { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
88     {S}
89     {
90       \msg_error:nn { tag } {struct-missing-tag}
91     }
92   }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_check_structure_has_tag:n`.)

`\_tag_check_structure_tag:N`

This checks if the name of the tag is known, either because it is a standard type or has been rolemapped.

```

93 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_check_structure_tag:N #1
94   {
95     \prop_if_in:NoF \g__tag_role_tags_prop {#1}
96     {
97       \msg_warning:nnx { tag } {role-unknown-tag} {#1}
98     }
99   }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_check_structure_tag:N`.)

`\_tag_check_info_closing_struct:n`

This info message is issued at a closing structure, the use should be guarded by log-level.

```

100 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_check_info_closing_struct:n #1 %#1 struct num
101   {
102     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
103     {
104       \msg_info:nnn { tag } {struct-show-closing} {#1}
105     }
106   }
107
108 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_check_info_closing_struct:n {o,x}

```

(End definition for `\_tag_check_info_closing_struct:n`.)

\\_\\_tag\\_check\\_no\\_open\\_struct: This checks if there is an open structure. It should be used when trying to close a structure. It errors if false.

```

109 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_check_no_open_struct:
110 {
111     \msg_error:nn { tag } {struct-faulty-nesting}
112 }

```

(End definition for \\_\\_tag\\_check\\_no\\_open\\_struct::)

\\_\\_tag\\_check\\_struct\\_used:n This checks if a stashed structure has already been used.

```

113 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_check_struct_used:n #1 %#1 label
114 {
115     \prop_get:cnNT
116         {g\_tag_struct\_}\_\_tag\_ref\_value:enn{tagpdfstruct-\#1}{tagstruct}{unknown}_prop
117         {P}
118     \l_tmpa_tl
119     {
120         \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice} {#1}
121     }
122 }

```

(End definition for \\_\\_tag\\_check\\_struct\\_used:n.)

### 6.3 Checks related to roles

\\_\\_tag\\_check\\_add\\_tag\\_role:nn This check is used when defining a new role mapping.

```

123 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_check_add_tag_role:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 role
124 {
125     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
126     {
127         \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-missing} {#1}
128     }
129     {
130         \prop_get:NnNT \g\_tag_role_tags_prop {#2} \l_tmpa_tl
131         {
132             \int_compare:nNnT {\l\_tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
133             {
134                 \msg_info:nnnn { tag } {role-tag} {#1} {#2}
135             }
136         }
137         {
138             \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown} {#2}
139         }
140     }
141 }

```

(End definition for \\_\\_tag\\_check\\_add\\_tag\\_role:nn.)

### 6.4 Check related to mc-chunks

\\_\\_tag\\_check\\_mc\\_if\\_nested: Two tests if a mc is currently open. One for the true (for begin code), one for the false part (for end code).

```

142 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_check_mc_if_nested:
143 {

```

```

144     \_\_tag\_mc\_if\_in:T
145     {
146         \msg_warning:nnx { tag } {mc-nested} { \_\_tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
147     }
148 }
149
150 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_check_mc_if_open:
151 {
152     \_\_tag_mc_if_in:F
153     {
154         \msg_warning:nnx { tag } {mc-not-open} { \_\_tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
155     }
156 }

```

*(End definition for \\_\\_tag\_check\_mc\_if\_nested: and \\_\\_tag\_check\_mc\_if\_open:.)*

\\_\\_tag\_check\_mc\_pushed\_popped:nn

This creates an information message if mc's are pushed or popped. The first argument is a word (pushed or popped), the second the tag name. With larger log-level the stack is shown too.

```

157 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn #1 #2
158 {
159     \int_compare:nNnT
160     { \l_\_tag_loglevel_int } ={ 2 }
161     { \msg_info:nnx {tag}{mc-#1}{#2} }
162     \int_compare:nNnT
163     { \l_\_tag_loglevel_int } > { 2 }
164     {
165         \msg_info:nnx {tag}{mc-#1}{#2}
166         \seq_log:N \g_\_tag_mc_stack_seq
167     }
168 }

```

*(End definition for \\_\\_tag\_check\_mc\_pushed\_popped:nn.)*

\\_\\_tag\_check\_mc\_tag:N

This checks if the mc has a (known) tag.

```

169 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_check_mc_tag:N #1 %#1 is var with a tag name in it
170 {
171     \tl_if_empty:NT #1
172     {
173         \msg_error:nnx { tag } {mc-tag-missing} { \_\_tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
174     }
175     \prop_if_in:NoF \g_\_tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}
176     {
177         \msg_warning:nnx { tag } {role-unknown-tag} {#1}
178     }
179 }

```

*(End definition for \\_\\_tag\_check\_mc\_tag:N.)*

\g\_\\_tag\_check\_mc\_used\_intarray  
\\_\\_tag\_check\_init\_mc\_used:

This variable holds the list of used mc numbers. Everytime we store a mc-number we will add one the relevant array index. If everything is right at the end there should be only 1 until the max count of the mcid. 2 indicates that one mcid was used twice, 0 that we lost one. In engines other than luatex the total number of all intarray entries are restricted so we use only a rather small value of 65536, and we initialize the array only

at first used, guarded by the log-level. This check is probably only needed for debugging.  
 TODO does this really make sense to check? When can it happen??

```

180 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_init_mc_used:
181 {
182     \intarray_new:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray { 65536 }
183     \cs_gset_eq:NN \__tag_check_init_mc_used: \prg_do_nothing:
184 }
```

*(End definition for \g\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_used\_intarray and \\_\_tag\_check\_init\_mc\_used:.)*

\\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_used:n This checks if a mc is used twice.

```

185 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_used:n #1 %#1 mcid abscnt
186 {
187     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 2 }
188     {
189         \__tag_check_init_mc_used:
190         \intarray_gset:Nnn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray
191             {#1}
192             { \intarray_item:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray {#1} + 1 }
193     \int_compare:nNnT
194         {
195             \intarray_item:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray {#1}
196         }
197         >
198         { 1 }
199         {
200             \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {mc-used-twice} {#1}
201         }
202     }
203 }
```

*(End definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_used:n.)*

\\_\_tag\_check\_show\_MCID\_by\_page: This allows to show the mc on a page. Currently unused.

```

204 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:
205 {
206     \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl
207     {
208         \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn
209             {abspage}
210             {-1}
211     }
212     \int_step_inline:nnnn {1}{1}
213     {
214         \l__tag_tmpa_tl
215     }
216     {
217         \seq_clear:N \l_tmpa_seq
218         \int_step_inline:nnnn
219             {1}
220             {1}
221             {
222                 \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn
223                     {tagmabs}
```

```

224         {-1}
225     }
226     {
227         \int_compare:nT
228         {
229             \__tag_ref_value:enn
230             {mcid-####1}
231             {tagabspage}
232             {-1}
233             =
234             ##1
235         }
236         {
237             \seq_gput_right:Nx \l_tmpa_seq
238             {
239                 Page##1-####1-
240                 \__tag_ref_value:enn
241                 {mcid-####1}
242                 {tagmcid}
243                 {-1}
244             }
245         }
246     }
247     \seq_show:N \l_tmpa_seq
248 }
249

```

(End definition for `\__tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:.`)

## 6.5 Checks related to the state of MC on a page or in a split stream

The following checks are currently only usable in generic mode as they rely on the marks defined in the mc-generic module. They are used to detect if a mc-chunk has been split by a page break or similar and additional end/begin commands are needed.

`\__tag_check_mc_in_galley_p:` At first we need a test to decide if `\tag_mc_begin:n` (tmb) and `\tag_mc_end:` (tme) has been used at all on the current galley. As each command issues two slightly different marks we can do it by comparing firstmarks and botmarks. The test assumes that the marks have been already mapped into the sequence with `\@@_mc_get_marks:.` As `\seq_if_eq:NNTF` doesn't exist we use the tl-test.

```

250 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley: { T,F,TF }
251 {
252     \tl_if_eq:NNTF \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
253     { \prg_return_false: }
254     { \prg_return_true: }
255 }

```

(End definition for `\__tag_check_mc_in_galley:TF.`)

`\__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing_p:` This checks if a extra top mark ("extra-tmb") is needed. According to the analysis this the case if the firstmarks start with `e-` or `b+`. Like above we assume that the marks content is already in the seq's.

```

256 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing: { T,F,TF }
257 {
258   \bool_if:nTF
259   {
260     \str_if_eq_p:ee {\seq_item:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {1}}{e-}
261     ||
262     \str_if_eq_p:ee {\seq_item:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {1}}{b+}
263   }
264   { \prg_return_true: }
265   { \prg_return_false: }
266 }

```

(End definition for `\__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF`.)

`\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:p`: This checks if a extra bottom mark (“extra-tme”) is needed. According to the analysis this the case if the botmarks starts with b+. Like above we assume that the marks content is already in the seq’s.

```

267 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing: { T,F,TF }
268 {
269   \str_if_eq:eeTF {\seq_item:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {1}}{b+}
270   { \prg_return_true: }
271   { \prg_return_false: }
272 }

```

(End definition for `\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF`.)

273 ⟨/package⟩

## Part II

# The **tagpdf-user** module

## Code related to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X2e user commands and document commands

### Part of the tagpdf package

## 1 Setup commands

---

```
\tagpdfsetup \tagpdfsetup{\{key val list\}}
```

This is the main setup command to adapt the behaviour of tagpdf. It can be used in the preamble and in the document (but not all keys make sense there).

## 2 Commands related to mc-chunks

---

```
\tagmcbegin \tagmcbegin {\{key-val\}}
\tagmcend   \tagmcend
\tagmcuse   \tagmcuse{\{label\}}
```

These are wrappers around \tag\_mc\_begin:n, \tag\_mc\_end: and \tag\_mc\_use:n. The commands and their argument are documented in the tagpdf-mc module. In difference to the expl3 commands, \tagmcbegin issues also an \ignorespaces, and \tagmcend will issue in horizontal mode an \unskip.

---

```
\tagmcifin \tagmcifin {\{true code\}}{\{false code\}}
```

This is a wrapper around \tag\_mc\_if\_in:TF. and tests if an mc is open or not. It is mostly of importance for pdflatex as lualatex doesn't mind much if a mc tag is not correctly closed. Unlike the expl3 command it is not expandable.

The command is probably not of much use and will perhaps disappear in future versions. It normally makes more sense to push/pop an mc-chunk.

## 3 Commands related to structures

---

```
\tagstructbegin \tagstructbegin {\{key-val\}}
\tagstructend   \tagstructend
\tagstructuse   \tagstructuse{\{label\}}
```

These are direct wrappers around \tag\_struct\_begin:n, \tag\_struct\_end: and \tag\_struct\_use:n. The commands and their argument are documented in the tagpdf-struct module.

## 4 Debugging

---

### \ShowTagging \ShowTagging {<key-val>}

This is a generic function to output various debugging helps. It not necessarily stops the compilation. The keys and their function are described below.

---

#### mc-data mc-data = <number>

This key is (currently?) relevant for lua mode only. It shows the data of all mc-chunks created so far. It is accurate only after shipout (and perhaps a second compilation), so typically should be issued after a newpage. The value is a positive integer and sets the first mc-shown. If no value is given, 1 is used and so all mc-chunks created so far are shown.

---

#### mc-current mc-current

This key shows the number and the tag of the currently open mc-chunk. If no chunk is open it shows only the state of the abs count. It works in all mode, but the output in luamode looks different.

---

#### struct-stack struct-stack = log|show

This key shows the current structure stack. With `log` the info is only written to the log-file, `show` stops the compilation and shows on the terminal. If no value is used, then the default is `show`.

## 5 Extension commands

The following commands and code parts are not core command of tagpdf. They either provide work-arounds for missing functionality elsewhere, or do a first step to apply tagpdf commands to document commands.

The commands and keys should be view as experimental!

This part will be regularly revisited to check if the code should go to a better place or can be improved and so can change easily.

### 5.1 Fake space

---

\pdffakespace (lua-only) This provides a lua-version of the \pdffakespace primitive of pdftex.

### 5.2 Paratagging

This is a first try to make use of the new paragraph hooks in a current LaTeX to automate the tagging of paragraph. It requires sane paragraph nesting, faulty code, e.g. a missing \par at the end of a low-level vbox can highly confuse the tagging. The tags should be carefully checked if this is used.

---

```
paratagging      paratagging = true|false
paratagging-show paratagging-show = true|false
```

---

This keys can be used in `\tagpdfsetup` and enable/disable paratagging. `paratagging-show` puts small red numbers at the begin and end of a paragraph. This is meant as a debugging help. The number are boxes and have a (tiny) height, so they can affect typesetting.

---

```
\tagpdfparaOn   These commands allow to enable/disable para tagging too and are a bit faster then
\tagpdfparaOff
```

---

### 5.3 Header and footer

Header and footer are automatically excluded from tagging. This can for now to allow debugging be disabled with the following key, but probably this key will disappear again. If some real content is in the header and footer, tagging must be restarted there explicitly.

---

```
exclude-header-footer exclude-header-footer = true|false
```

---

### 5.4 Link tagging

Links need a special structure and cross reference system. This is added through hooks of the l3pdfannot module and will work automatically if tagging is activated.

Links should (probably) have an alternative text in the `Contents` key. It is unclear which text this should be and how to get it. Currently the code simply adds the fix texts `url` and `ref`. Another text can be added by changing the dictionary value:

```
\pdfannot_dict_put:n
{ link/GoTo }
{ Contents }
{ (ref) }
```

## 6 User commands and extensions of document commands

```
1 <@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-user} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4   {tagpdf - user commands}
5 </header>
```

## 7 Setup and preamble commands

```
\tagpdfsetup
6  {*package}
7  \NewDocumentCommand \tagpdfsetup { m }
8  {
9    \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup } { #1 }
10 }
```

(End definition for `\tagpdfsetup`. This function is documented on page 25.)

## 8 Commands for the mc-chunks

```
\tagmcbegin
  \tagmcend 11 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbegin { m }
  \tagmcuse 12 {
    13   \tag_mc_begin:n {#1} \%ignorespaces
  14 }
  15
  16
  17 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcend { }
  18 {
    19   \%if_mode_horizontal: \unskip \fi: %
    20   \tag_mc_end:
  21 }
  22
  23 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcuse { m }
  24 {
    25   \tag_mc_use:n {#1}
  26 }
  27
```

(End definition for `\tagmcbegin`, `\tagmcend`, and `\tagmcuse`. These functions are documented on page 25.)

`\tagmcifinTF` This is a wrapper around `\tag_mc_if_in:` and tests if an mc is open or not. It is mostly of importance for pdflatex as lualatex doesn't mind much if a mc tag is not correctly closed. Unlike the `expl3` command it is not expandable.

```
28 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcifinTF { m m }
29 {
30   \tag_mc_if_in:TF { #1 } { #2 }
31 }
```

(End definition for `\tagmcifinTF`. This function is documented on page ??.)

## 9 Commands for the structure

`\tagstructbegin` These are structure related user commands. There are direct wrapper around the `expl3` variants.  
`\tagstructend`

```
32 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructbegin { m }
33 {
34   \tag_struct_begin:n {#1}
35 }
36
37 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructend { }
38 {
39   \tag_struct_end:
40 }
41
42 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructuse { m }
43 {
44   \tag_struct_use:n {#1}
45 }
```

*(End definition for \tagstructbegin, \tagstructend, and \tagstructuse. These functions are documented on page 25.)*

\tagpdfifluatexTF I should deprecate them ...

```
46 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagpdfifluatexTF \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
47 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagpdfifluatexT \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
48 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagpdfifpdftexT \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
```

*(End definition for \tagpdfifluatexTF, \tagpdfifluatexT, and \tagpdfifpdftexTF. These functions are documented on page ??.)*

## 10 Debugging

**\ShowTagging** This is a generic command for various show commands. It takes a keyval list, the various keys are implemented below.

```
49 \NewDocumentCommand\ShowTagging { m }
50   {
51     \keys_set:nn { __tag / show }{ #1}
52   }
```

*(End definition for \ShowTagging. This function is documented on page 26.)*

**mc-data** This key is (currently?) relevant for lua mode only. It shows the data of all mc-chunks created so far. It is accurate only after shipout, so typically should be issued after a newpage. With the optional argument the minimal number can be set.

```
54 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
55   {
56     mc-data .code:n =
57     {
58       \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
59       {
60         \lua_now:e[ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data(#1,\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,0)}
61       }
62     }
63   ,mc-data .default:n = 1
64 }
```

*(End definition for mc-data. This function is documented on page 26.)*

**mc-current** This shows some info about the current mc-chunk. It works in generic and lua-mode.

```
66 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
67   {
68     mc-current .code:n =
69     {
70       \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
71       {
72         \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
73         {
74           \int_compare:nNnTF
75             { -2147483647 }
76             =
77             {
```

```

77     \lua_now:e
78     {
79         tex.print
80             (tex.getattribute
81                 (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr))
82     }
83 }
84 {
85     \lua_now:e
86     {
87         ltx._tag.trace.log
88             (
89                 "mc-current:~no~MC~open,~current~abscnt
90                     =\_\_tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:"
91                     ,0
92             )
93         texio.write_nl("")
94     }
95 }
96 {
97     \lua_now:e
98     {
99         ltx._tag.trace.log
100            (
101                "mc-current:~abscnt=\_\_tag_get_mc_abs_cnt=="
102                ..
103                tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr)
104                ..
105                "~=>tag="
106                ..
107                tostring
108                    (ltx._tag.func.get_tag_from
109                     (tex.getattribute
110                         (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)))
111                    ..
112                    "="
113                    ..
114                    tex.getattribute
115                        (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)
116                        ,0
117                    )
118                    texio.write_nl("")
119                }
120            }
121        }
122    }
123 {
124     \msg_note:nn{ tag }{ mc-current }
125 }
126 }
127 }
```

(End definition for `mc-current`. This function is documented on page 26.)

**mc-marks** It maps the mc-marks into the sequences and then shows them. This allows to inspect the

first and last mc-Mark on a page. It should only be used in the shipout (header/footer).

```

128 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
129 {
130   mc-marks .choice: ,
131   mc-marks / show .code:n =
132 {
133   \__tag_mc_get_marks:
134   \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF
135   {
136     \iow_term:n {Marks~from~this~page:~}
137   }
138   {
139     \iow_term:n {Marks~from~a~previous~page:~}
140   }
141   \seq_show:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
142   \seq_show:N \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
143   \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:T
144   {
145     \iow_term:n {BDC~missing~on~this~page!}
146   }
147   \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:T
148   {
149     \iow_term:n {EMC~missing~on~this~page!}
150   }
151 },
152   mc-marks / use .code:n =
153 {
154   \__tag_mc_get_marks:
155   \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF
156   {
157     \iow_term:n {Marks~from~this~page:~}
158     \iow_term:n {Marks~from~a~previous~page:~}
159   }
160   \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {,~}\quad
161   \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {,~}\quad
162   \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:T
163   {
164     BDC~missing~
165   }
166   \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:T
167   {
168     EMC~missing
169   },
170   mc-marks .default:n = show
171 }
```

(End definition for *mc-marks*. This function is documented on page ??.)

#### **struct-stack**

```

171 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
172 {
173   struct-stack .choice:
174   ,struct-stack / log .code:n = \seq_log:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
175   ,struct-stack / show .code:n = \seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
176   ,struct-stack .default:n = show
```

```
177 }
```

(End definition for `struct-stack`. This function is documented on page 26.)

## 11 Commands to extend document commands

The following commands and code parts are not core command of tagpdf. They either provide work arounds for missing functionality elsewhere, or do a first step to apply tagpdf commands to document commands. This part should be regularly revisited to check if the code should go to a better place or can be improved.

### 11.1 Document structure

```
\__tag_add_document_structure:n
activate 178 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_document_structure:n #1
179 {
180     \hook_gput_code:nnn{\begindocument}{\tagpdf}{\tagstructbegin{tag=#1}}
181     \hook_gput_code:nnn{\tagpdf/finish/before}{\tagpdf}{\tagstructend}
182 }
183 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
184 {
185     activate .code:n =
186     {
187         \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup }
188         { activate-mc,activate-tree,activate-struct }
189         \__tag_add_document_structure:n {#1}
190     },
191     activate .default:n = Document
192 }
```

(End definition for `\__tag_add_document_structure:n` and `activate`. This function is documented on page ??.)

### 11.2 Fake space

`\pdffakespace` We need a luatex variant for `\pdffakespace`. This should probably go into the kernel at some time.

```
193 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
194 {
195     \NewDocumentCommand\pdffakespace { }
196     {
197         \__tag_fakespace:
198     }
199 }
```

(End definition for `\pdffakespace`. This function is documented on page 26.)

### 11.3 Paratagging

The following are some simple commands to enable/disable paratagging. Probably one should add some checks if we are already in a paragraph.

```
\l__tag_para_bool At first some variables.  

\l__tag_para_show_bool 200 \bool_new:N \l__tag_para_bool  

\g__tag_para_int 201 \bool_new:N \l__tag_para_show_bool  

202 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_begin_int  

203 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_end_int  

  

(End definition for \l__tag_para_bool, \l__tag_para_show_bool, and \g__tag_para_int.)
```

**paratagging**  
**paratagging-show** These keys enable/disable locally paratagging, and the debug modus. It can affect the typesetting if **paratagging-show** is used. The small numbers are boxes and they have a (small) height.

```
204 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }  

205 {  

206     paratagging .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,  

207     paratagging-show .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_show_bool,  

208 }  

209
```

(End definition for **paratagging** and **paratagging-show**. These functions are documented on page 27.)  
This fills the para hooks with the needed code.

```
210 \AddToHook{para/begin}  

211 {  

212     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool  

213     {  

214         \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_begin_int  

215         \tag_struct_begin:n {tag=P}  

216         \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_show_bool  

217         { \tag_mc_begin:n{artifact}  

218             \llap{\color_select:n{red}\tiny\int_use:N\g__tag_para_begin_int\ }  

219             \tag_mc_end:  

220         }  

221         \tag_mc_begin:n {tag=P}  

222     }  

223 }  

224 \AddToHook{para/end}  

225 {  

226     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool  

227     {  

228         \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_end_int  

229         \tag_mc_end:  

230         \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_show_bool  

231         { \tag_mc_begin:n{artifact}  

232             \rlap{\color_select:n{red}\tiny\int_use:N\g__tag_para_end_int\ }  

233             \tag_mc_end:  

234         }  

235         \tag_struct_end:  

236     }  

237 }  

238 \AddToHook{enddocument/info}
```

```

239   {
240     \int_compare:nNnF {\g__tag_para_begin_int}={\g__tag_para_end_int}
241     {
242       \msg_error:nnxx
243         {tag}
244         {para-hook-count-wrong}
245         {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_begin_int}
246         {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_end_int}
247     }
248   }

```

In generic mode we need the additional code from the ptagging tests.

```

249 \AddToHook{begindocument/before}
250 {
251   \bool_if:NF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
252   {
253     \cs_if_exist:NT \@kernel@before@footins
254     {
255       \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@footins
256         { \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn \footins {footnote} }
257       \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@cclv
258       {
259         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {====>~In~\token_to_str:N \@makecol\c_space_tl\the\c@p
260           \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn \@cclv {main}}
261       }
262       \tl_put_right:Nn \@mult@ptagging@hook
263       {
264         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {====>~In~\string\page@sofar}
265         \process@cols\mult@gfirstbox
266         {
267           \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn \count@ {multicol}
268         }
269         \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn \mult@rightbox {multicol}
270       }
271     }
272   }
273 }

```

**\tagpdfparaOn** This two command switch para mode on and off. **\tagpdfsetup** could be used too but is longer.

```

274 \newcommand\tagpdfparaOn {\bool_set_true:N \l__tag_para_bool}
275 \newcommand\tagpdfparaOff{\bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool}

```

(End definition for **\tagpdfparaOn** and **\tagpdfparaOff**. These functions are documented on page 27.)

**\tagpdfsuppressmarks** This command allows to suppress the creation of the marks. It takes an argument which should normally be one of the mc-commands, puts a group around it and suppress the marks creation in this group. This command should be used if the begin and end command are at different boxing levels. E.g.

```

\@hangfrom
{
  \tagstructbegin{tag=H1}%
  \tagmcbegin {tag=H1}%

```

```

    #2
}
{#3\tagpdfsuppressmarks{\tagmcend}\tagstructend}%
276 \NewDocumentCommand\tagpdfsuppressmarks{m}
277   {{\use:c{\_tag_mc_disable_marks}} #1}}

```

(End definition for `\tagpdfsuppressmarks`. This function is documented on page ??.)

## 11.4 Header and footer

Header and footer should normally be tagged as artifacts. The following code requires the new hooks. For now we allow to disable this function, but probably the code should always there at the end. TODO check if Pagination should be changeable.

```

278 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:{}
279 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head:{}
280 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:{}
281 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:{}
282
283 \AddToHook{begindocument}
284 {
285   \cs_if_exist:NT \@kernel@before@head
286   {
287     \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@head {\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:}
288     \tl_put_left:Nn \@kernel@after@head {\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head:}
289     \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@foot {\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:}
290     \tl_put_left:Nn \@kernel@after@foot {\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:}
291   }
292 }
293
294 \bool_new:N \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
295 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
296 {
297   \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool
298   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
299   {
300     \tag_mc_end_push:
301   }
302   {
303     \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool \g__tag_in_mc_bool
304     \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
305   }
306   \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact}
307 }
308 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
309 {
310   \tag_mc_end:
311   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
312   {
313     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}
314   }
315   {
316     \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_in_mc_bool\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
317   }

```

```

318 }
319
320 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
321 {
322   exclude-header-footer .choice:,
323   exclude-header-footer / true .code:n =
324   {
325     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
326     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
327     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
328     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
329   },
330   exclude-header-footer / false .code:n =
331   {
332     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: \prg_do_nothing:
333     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: \prg_do_nothing:
334     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \prg_do_nothing:
335     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \prg_do_nothing:
336   },
337   exclude-header-footer .default:n = true,
338   exclude-header-footer .initial:n = true
339 }

```

## 11.5 Links

We need to close and reopen mc-chunks around links. Currently we handle URI and GoTo (internal) links. Links should have an alternative text in the Contents key. It is unclear which text this should be and how to get it.

```

340 \hook_gput_code:nnn
341 {pdfannot/link/URI/before}
342 {tagpdf}
343 {
344   \tag_mc_end_push:
345   \tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
346   \tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
347   \pdfannot_dict_put:nnx
348   { link/URI }
349   { StructParent }
350   { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
351 }
352
353 \hook_gput_code:nnn
354 {pdfannot/link/URI/after}
355 {tagpdf}
356 {
357   \tag_struct_insert_annot:xx {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
358   \tag_mc_end:
359   \tag_struct_end:
360   \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
361 }
362
363 \hook_gput_code:nnn
364 {pdfannot/link/GoTo/before}

```

```

365 {tagpdf}
366 {
367     \tag_mc_end_push:
368     \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
369     \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
370     \pdfannot_dict_put:nnx
371         { link/GoTo }
372         { StructParent }
373         { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
374     }
375
376 \hook_gput_code:nnn
377     {pdfannot/link/GoTo/after}
378 {tagpdf}
379 {
380     \tag_struct_insert_annot:xx {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
381     \tag_mc_end:
382     \tag_struct_end:
383     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}
384 }
385
386
387 % "alternative descriptions " for PAX3. How to get better text here??
388 \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn
389     { link/URI }
390     { Contents }
391     { (url) }
392
393 \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn
394     { link/GoTo }
395     { Contents }
396     { (ref) }
397
398
399 </package>

```

## Part III

# The **tagpdf-tree** module

## Commands trees and main dictionaries

## Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-tree-code} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to writing trees and dictionaries to the pdf}
5 </header>
```

### 1 Trees, pdfmanagement and finalization code

The code to finish the structure is in a hook. This will perhaps at the end be a kernel hook. TODO check right place for the code. The pdfmanagement code is the kernel hook after shipout/lastpage so all code affecting it should be before. Objects can be written later, at least in pdf mode.

```
6 <*package>
7 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
8 {
9   \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_tree_bool
10  {
11    \sys_if_output_pdf:TF
12    {
13      \AddToHook{enddocument/end} { \__tag_finish_structure: }
14    }
15    {
16      \AddToHook{shipout/lastpage} { \__tag_finish_structure: }
17    }
18  }
19 }
```

#### 1.1 Catalog: MarkInfo and StructTreeRoot

The StructTreeRoot and the MarkInfo entry must be added to the catalog. We do it late so that we can win, but before the pdfmanagement hook.

```
--tag/struct/0 This is the object for the root object, the StructTreeRoot
20 \pdf_object_new:nn { __tag/struct/0 }{ dict }

(End definition for __tag/struct/0.)

21 \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/lastpage}{tagpdf}
22 {
23   \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_tree_bool
24   {
25     \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Catalog / MarkInfo } { Marked } { true }
26     \pdfmanagement_add:nnx
```

```

27     { Catalog }
28     { StructTreeRoot }
29     { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/struct/0 } }
30   }
31 }
```

## 1.2 Writing structure elements

The following commands are needed to write out the structure.

\\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_structtreeroot:

```

32 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
33 {
34   \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
35   { g__tag_struct_0_prop }
36   { ParentTree }
37   { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/parenttree } }
38   \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
39   { g__tag_struct_0_prop }
40   { RoleMap }
41   { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/rolemap } }
42   \__tag_struct_write_obj:n { 0 }
43 }
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_structtreeroot::)

\\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_structelements:

This writes out the other struct elems, the absolute number is in the counter

```

44 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_structelements:
45 {
46   \int_step_inline:nnnn {1}{1}{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
47   {
48     \__tag_struct_write_obj:n { ##1 }
49   }
50 }
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_structelements::)

## 1.3 ParentTree

--tag/tree/parenttree

The object which will hold the parenttree

```

51 \pdf_object_new:nn { __tag/tree/parenttree }{ dict }
```

(End definition for --tag/tree/parenttree.)

The ParentTree maps numbers to objects or (if the number represents a page) to arrays of objects. The numbers refer to two distinct types of entries: page streams and real objects like annotations. The numbers must be distinct and ordered. So we rely on abspage for the pages and put the real objects at the end. We use a counter to have a chance to get the correct number if code is processed twice.

\c@g\_\_tag\_parenttree\_obj\_int

This is a counter for the real objects. It starts at the absolute last page value. It relies on l3ref.

```

52 \newcounter { g__tag_parenttree_obj_int }
53 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
54 {
```

```

55     \int_gset:Nn
56         \c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int
57         { \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn{abspage}{100}  }
58     }

```

(End definition for `\c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int`.)

We store the number/object references in a tl-var. If more structure is needed one could switch to a seq.

`\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl`

```

59 \tl_new:N \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl

```

(End definition for `\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl`.)

`\_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn`

This command stores a StructParent number and a objref into the tl var. This is only for objects like annotations, pages are handled elsewhere.

```

60 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn #1 #2 %#1 StructParent number, #2 objref
61 {
62     \tl_gput_right:Nx \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl
63     {
64         #1 \c_space_tl #2 ^^J
65     }
66 }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn`.)

`\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl`

A tl-var which will get the page related parenttree content.

```

67 \tl_new:N \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl

```

(End definition for `\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl`.)

`\_tag_tree_fill_parenttree:`

This is the main command to assemble the page related entries of the parent tree. It wanders through the pages and the mcid numbers and collects all mcid of one page.

```

68
69 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_tree_fill_parenttree:
70 {
71     \int_step_inline:nnnn{1}{1}{\__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn{abspage}{-1}} %not quite clear if
72     { %page ##1
73         \prop_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_prop
74         \int_step_inline:nnnn{1}{1}{\__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn{tagmcabs}{-1}}
75         {
76             %mcid####1
77             \int_compare:nT
78                 {\__tag_ref_value:enn{mcid-####1}{tagabspage}{-1}##1} %mcid is on current page
79             {%
80                 \prop_put:Nxx
81                     \l__tag_tmpa_prop
82                     {\__tag_ref_value:enn{mcid-####1}{tagmcid}{-1}}
83                     {\prop_item:Nn \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop {####1}}
84             }
85         }
86         \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
87         {
88             \int_eval:n {##1-1}\c_space_tl
89             [\c_space_tl %]

```

```

90
91     }
92     \int_step_inline:nnnn
93     {0}
94     {1}
95     { \prop_count:N \l_tag_tmpa_prop -1 }
96     {
97         \prop_get:NnNTF \l_tag_tmpa_prop {####1} \l_tag_tmpa_tl
98         t% page#1:mcid#1:\l_tag_tmpa_tl :content
99         \tl_put_right:Nx \l_tag_parenttree_content_tl
100        {
101            \pdf_object_if_exist:eT { __tag/struct/\l_tag_tmpa_tl }
102            {
103                \pdf_object_ref:e { __tag/struct/\l_tag_tmpa_tl }
104            }
105            \c_space_tl
106        }
107    }
108    \msg_warning:nn { tag } {tree-mcid-index-wrong}
109 }
110
111 \tl_put_right:Nn
112 \l_tag_parenttree_content_tl
113 {[
114     ]^J
115 }
116 }
117 }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_tree\_fill\_parenttree:..`)

`\_tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:` This is a special variant for luatex. lua mode must/can do it differently.

```

118 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:
119 {
120     \tl_set:Nn \l_tag_parenttree_content_tl
121     {
122         \lua_now:e
123         {
124             ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree
125             (
126                 \int_use:N\g_shipout_READONLY_int
127             )
128         }
129     }
130 }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:..`)

`\_tag_tree_write_parenttree:` This combines the two parts and writes out the object. TODO should the check for lua be moved into the backend code?

```

131 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_tree_write_parenttree:
132 {
133     \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
134     {

```

```

135     \__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:
136 }
137 {
138     \__tag_tree_fill_parenttree:
139 }
140 \tl_put_right:NV \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl
141 \pdf_object_write:nx { __tag/tree/parenttree }
142 {
143     /Nums\c_space_t1 [\l__tag_parenttree_content_t1]
144 }
145 }

(End definition for \__tag_tree_write_parenttree:..)

```

## 1.4 Rolemap dictionary

The Rolemap dictionary describes relations between new tags and standard types. The main part here is handled in the role module, here we only define the command which writes it to the PDF.

`__tag/tree/rolemap` At first we reserve again an object.

```

146 \pdf_object_new:nn { __tag/tree/rolemap }{ dict }
(End definition for __tag/tree/rolemap.)

```

`\__tag_tree_write_rolemap:` This writes out the rolemap, basically it simply pushes out the dictionary which has been filled in the role module.

```

147 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_rolemap:
148 {
149     \pdf_object_write:nx { __tag/tree/rolemap }
150     {
151         \pdfdict_use:n{g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
152     }
153 }

```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_rolemap:..)

## 1.5 Classmap dictionary

Classmap and attributes are setup in the struct module, here is only the code to write it out. It should only done if values have been used.

`\__tag_tree_write_classmap:`

```

154 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_classmap:
155 {
156     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
157     \seq_gremove_duplicates:N \g__tag_attr_class_used_seq
158     \seq_set_map:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_seq \g__tag_attr_class_used_seq
159     {
160         /##1\c_space_t1
161         <<
162             \prop_item:Nn
163             \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
164             {##1}

```

```

165      >>
166    }
167 \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl
168 {
169   \seq_use:Nn
170   \l__tag_tmpa_seq
171   { \iow_newline: }
172 }
173 \tl_if_empty:NF
174   \l__tag_tmpa_tl
175 {
176   \pdf_object_new:nn { __tag/tree/classmap }{ dict }
177   \pdf_object_write:nx
178   { __tag/tree/classmap }
179   { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
180   \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
181   { g__tag_struct_0_prop }
182   { ClassMap }
183   { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/classmap } }
184 }
185 }

(End definition for \__tag_tree_write_classmap::)

```

## 1.6 Namespaces

Namespaces are handle in the role module, here is the code to write them out. Namespaces are only relevant for pdf2.0 but we don't care, it doesn't harm.

```

__tag/tree/namespaces
186 \pdf_object_new:nn{ __tag/tree/namespaces }{array}
(End definition for __tag/tree/namespaces.)

__tag_tree_write_namespaces:
187 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_namespaces:
188 {
189   \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_prop
190   {
191     \pdfdict_if_empty:nF {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS##1_dict}
192     {
193       \pdf_object_write:nx {__tag/RoleMapNS##1}
194       {
195         \pdfdict_use:n {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS##1_dict}
196       }
197       \pdfdict_gput:nnx{g__tag_role/Namespace##1_dict}
198       {RoleMapNS}\pdf_object_ref:n {__tag/RoleMapNS##1}
199     }
200   \pdf_object_write:nx{tag/NS##1}
201   {
202     \pdfdict_use:n {g__tag_role/Namespace##1_dict}
203   }
204 }
205 \pdf_object_write:nx {__tag/tree/namespaces}
206 {

```

```

207           \prop_map_tokens:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_prop{\use_i:nn}
208       }
209   }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_tree_write_namespaces:..`)

## 1.7 Finishing the structure

This assembles the various parts. TODO (when tabular are done or if someone requests it): IDTree

`\_tag_finish_structure:`

```

210 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_finish_structure:
211 {
212     \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_tree_bool
213     {
214         \hook_use:n {tagpdf/finish/before}
215         \_tag_tree_write_parenttree:
216         \_tag_tree_write_rolemap:
217         \_tag_tree_write_classmap:
218         \_tag_tree_write_namespaces:
219         \_tag_tree_write_structelements: %this is rather slow!%
220         \_tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
221     }
222 }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_finish_structure:..`)

## 1.8 StructParents entry for Page

We need to add to the Page resources the `StructParents` entry, this is simply the absolute page number.

```

223 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
224 {
225     \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_tree_bool
226     {
227         \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before} { tagpdf/structparents }
228         {
229             \pdfmanagement_add:nnx
230             { Page }
231             { StructParents }
232             { \int_eval:n { \g_shipout_READONLY_int } }
233         }
234     }
235 }
236 </package>

```

## Part IV

# The **tagpdf-mc-shared** module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), code shared by all modes

## Part of the tagpdf package

### 1 Public Commands

---

```
\tag_mc_begin:n \tag_mc_begin:n{\langle key-values\rangle}
\tag_mc_end:   \tag_mc_end:
```

These commands insert the end code of the marked content. They don't end a group and in generic mode it doesn't matter if they are in another group as the starting commands. In generic mode both commands check if they are correctly nested and issue a warning if not.

---

```
\tag_mc_use:n \tag_mc_use:n{\langle label\rangle}
```

These command allow to record a marked content that was stashed away before into the current structure. A marked content can be used only once – the command will issue a warning if an mc is use a second time.

---

```
\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n {\langle name\rangle}
\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:   \tag_mc_artifact_group_end:
```

New: 2019-11-20

---

This command pair creates a group with an artifact marker at the begin and the end. Inside the group the tagging commands are disabled. It allows to mark a complete region as artifact without having to worry about user commands with tagging commands.  $\langle name \rangle$  should be a value allowed also for the `artifact` key. It pushes and pops mc-chunks at the begin and end. TODO: document is in tagpdf.tex

---

```
\tag_mc_end_push: \tag_mc_end_push:
\tag_mc_begin_pop:n \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{\langle key-values\rangle}
```

New: 2021-04-22 If there is an open mc chunk, `\tag_mc_end_push:` ends it and pushes its tag of the (global) stack. If there is no open chunk, it puts  $-1$  on the stack (for debugging) `\tag_mc_begin_pop:n` removes a value from the stack. If it is different from  $-1$  it opens a tag with it. The reopened mc chunk loses info like the alttext for now.

---

```
\tag_mc_if_in_p: * \tag_mc_if_in:TF {\langle true code\rangle} {\langle false code\rangle}
\tag_mc_if_in:TF * Determines if a mc-chunk is open.
```

## 2 Public keys

The following keys can be used with \tag\_mc\_begin:n, \tagmcbegin, \tag\_mc\_begin\_pop:n,

**tag** This key is required, unless artifact is used. The value is a tag like P or H1 without a slash at the begin, this is added by the code. It is possible to setup new tags. The value of the key is expanded, so it can be a command. The expansion is passed unchanged to the PDF, so it should with a starting slash give a valid PDF name (some ascii with numbers like H4 is fine).

**artifact** This will setup the marked content as an artifact. The key should be used for content that should be ignored. The key can take one of the values `pagination`, `layout`, `page`, `background` and `notype` (this is the default).

**raw** This key allows to add more entries to the properties dictionary. The value must be correct, low-level PDF. E.g. `raw=/Alt (Hello)` will insert an alternative Text.

**alttext** This key inserts an `/Alt` value in the property dictionary of the BDC operator. The value is handled as verbatim string, commands are not expanded. The value will be expanded first once.

**actualtext** This key inserts an `/ActualText` value in the property dictionary of the BDC operator. The value is handled as verbatim string, commands are not expanded. The value will be expanded first once.

**label** This key sets a label by which one can call the marked content later in another structure (if it has been stashed with the `stash` key). Internally the label name will start with `tagpdf-`.

**stash** This “stashes” an mc-chunk: it is not inserted into the current structure. It should be normally be used along with a label to be able to use the mc-chunk in another place.

The code is splitted into three parts: code shared by all engines, code specific to luamode and code not used by luamode.

## 3 Marked content code – shared

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 {*header}
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-shared} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to marking chunks -
5   code shared by generic and luamode }
6 </header>
```

### 3.1 Variables and counters

MC chunks must be counted. I use a latex counter for the absolute count, so that it is added to `\c1@@ckpt` and restored e.g. in tabulars and align. `\int_new:N \c@g_@@_MCID_int` and `\tl_put_right:Nn\c1@@ckpt{\@elt{g_uf_test_int}}` would work too, but as the name is not `expl3` then too, why bother? The absolute counter can be used to label and to check if the page counter needs a reset.

`g__tag_MCID_abs_int`

```

7  {*shared}
8  \newcounter{g__tag_MCID_abs_int}

(End definition for g__tag_MCID_abs_int.)
```

`\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:` A (expandable) function to get the current value of the cnt.

```

9  \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }

(End definition for \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt.)
```

`\g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int`

The following hold the temporary by page number assigned to a mc. It must be defined in the shared code to avoid problems with labels.

```

10 \int_new:N \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int

(End definition for \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int.)
```

`\g__tag_in_mc_bool`

This booleans record if a mc is open, to test nesting.

```

11 \bool_new:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool

(End definition for \g__tag_in_mc_bool.)
```

`\g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop`

For every chunk we need to know the structure it is in, to record this in the parent tree. We store this in a property.

key: absolute number of the mc (tagmcabs)  
value: the structure number the mc is in

```

12 \__tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop

(End definition for \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop.)
```

`\g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop`

Some commands (e.g. links) want to close a previous mc and reopen it after they did their work. For this we create a stack:

```

13 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_stack_seq

(End definition for \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop.)
```

`\l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl`

Artifacts can have various types like Pagination or Layout. This stored in this variable.

```

14 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl

(End definition for \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl.)
```

`\l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool`

This booleans store the stash and artifact status of the mc-chunk.

`\l__tag_mc_artifact_bool`

```

15 \bool_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
16 \bool_new:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool

(End definition for \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool and \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool.)
```

\l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_tag\_tl  
\g\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_tag\_tl  
\l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_label\_tl  
\l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_properties\_tl

Variables used by the keys. \l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_properties\_tl will collect a number of values. TODO: should this be a pdfdict now?

```

17 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
18 \tl_new:N \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
19 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl
20 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl

```

(End definition for \l\_\_tag\_mc\_key\_tag\_tl and others.)

### 3.2 Functions

\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mc\_label:n

The commands labels a mc-chunk. It is used if the user explicitly labels the mc-chunk with the `label` key. The argument is the value provided by the user. It stores the attributes

`tagabspage`: the absolute page, `\g_shipout_READONLY_int`,  
`tagmcabs`: the absolute mc-counter `\c@g_@_MCID_abs_int`,

`tagmcid`: the ID of the chunk on the page `\g_@_MCID_tmp_bypage_int`, this typically settles down after a second compilation. The reference command is defined in tagpdf.dtx and is based on l3ref.

```

21 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n
22 {
23     \__tag_ref_label:en{tagpdf-\#1}{mc}
24 }

```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mc\_label:n.)

\\_\_tag\_mc\_set\_label\_used:n

Unlike with structures we can't check if a labeled mc has been used by looking at the P key, so we use a dedicated csname for the test

```

25 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_set_label_used:n #1 %#1 labelname
26 {
27     \tl_new:c { g__tag_mc_label_\tl_to_str:n{\#1}_used_t1 }
28 }

```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_set\_label\_used:n.)

\tag\_mc\_use:n

These command allow to record a marked content that was stashed away before into the current structure. A marked content can be used only once – the command will issue a warning if an mc is use a second time. The argument is a label name set with the `label` key.

TODO: is testing for struct the right test?

```

29 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_use:n #1 %#1: label name
30 {
31     \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
32     {
33         \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpt1 { \__tag_ref_value:nnn{tagpdf-\#1}{tagmcabs}{} }
34         \tl_if_empty:NTF\l__tag_tmpt1
35         {
36             \msg_warning:nnn {tag} {mc-label-unknown} {\#1}
37         }
38         {
39             \cs_if_free:cTF { g__tag_mc_label_\tl_to_str:n{\#1}_used_t1 }
40             {
41                 \__tag_mc_handle_stash:x { \l__tag_tmpt1 }

```

```

42           \_\_tag\_mc\_set\_label\_used:n {\#1}
43       }
44   {
45       \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{mc-used-twice}{\#1}
46   }
47 }
48 }
49 }
```

(End definition for `\tag_mc_use:n`. This function is documented on page 45.)

`\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n` This opens an artifact of the type given in the argument, and then stops all tagging. It creates a group. It pushes and pops mc-chunks at the begin and end.

```

50 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n #1
51 {
52     \tag_mc_end_push:
53     \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact=\#1}
54     \tag_stop_group_begin:
55 }
56
57 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_end:
58 {
59     \tag_stop_group_end:
60     \tag_mc_end:
61     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}
62 }
```

(End definition for `\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n` and `\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:`. These functions are documented on page 45.)

```

\tag_mc_end_push:
\tag_mc_begin_pop:n
63 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_end_push:
64 {
65     \_\_tag_check_if_active_mc:T
66     {
67         \_\_tag_mc_if_in:TF
68         {
69             \seq_gpush:Nx \g__tag_mc_stack_seq { \tag_get:n {mc_tag} }
70             \_\_tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn
71             {
72                 \tag_get:n {mc_tag}
73             }
74         }
75     }
76     \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_mc_stack_seq {-1}
77     \_\_tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn { pushed }{-1}
78 }
79 }
80 }
81 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin_pop:n #1
82 {
83     \_\_tag_check_if_active_mc:T
84     {
85         \seq_gpop:NNTF \g__tag_mc_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_t1
```

```

87      {
88          \tl_if_eq:NnTF \l__tag_tma_tl {-1}
89          {
90              \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{-1}
91          }
92          {
93              \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{\l__tag_tma_tl}
94              \tag_mc_begin:n {tag=\l__tag_tma_tl,\#1}
95          }
96      }
97      {
98          \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{empty~stack,~nothing}
99      }
100  }
101 }

(End definition for \tag_mc_end_push: and \tag_mc_begin_pop:n. These functions are documented on page 45.)
```

### 3.3 Keys

This are the keys where the code can be shared between the modes.

**stash** the two internal artifact keys are use to define the public **artifact**. For now we add support for the subtypes Header and Footer. Watermark,PageNum, LineNum,Redaction,Bates will be added if some use case emerges. If some use case for /BBox and /Attached emerges, it will be perhaps necessary to adapt the code.

```

102 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
103 {
104     stash                      .bool_set:N    = \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool,
105     __artifact-bool            .bool_set:N    = \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool,
106     __artifact-type           .choice:,       =
107     __artifact-type / pagination .code:n    =
108     {
109         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination }
110     },
111     __artifact-type / pagination/header .code:n   =
112     {
113         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination/Subtype/Header }
114     },
115     __artifact-type / pagination/footer .code:n   =
116     {
117         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination/Subtype/Footer }
118     },
119     __artifact-type / layout      .code:n    =
120     {
121         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Layout }
122     },
123     __artifact-type / page       .code:n    =
124     {
125         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Page }
126     },
127     __artifact-type / background .code:n   =
128     {
```

```

129      \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Background }
130    },
131    __artifact-type / notype .code:n =
132    {
133      \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl {}
134    },
135    __artifact-type / .code:n =
136    {
137      \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl {}
138    },
139  }

```

(End definition for `stash`, `__artifact-bool`, and `__artifact-type`. This function is documented on page 73.)

```
140 </shared>
```

## Part V

# The **tagpdf-mc-generic** module

## Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), generic mode

### Part of the tagpdf package

## 1 Marked content code – generic mode

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 (*generic)
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-generic} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to marking chunks - generic mode}
5 </generic>
```

### 1.1 Variables

\g\\_tag\\_MCID\\_byabspage\\_prop This property will hold the current maximum on a page it will contain key-value of type *abspagenum*=*max mcid*

```
6 (*generic)
7 \_tag_prop_new:N \g\_tag\_MCID\_byabspage\_prop
```

(End definition for \g\\_tag\\_MCID\\_byabspage\\_prop.)

\l\\_tag\\_mc\\_ref\\_abspage\\_tl We need a ref-label system to ensure that the MCID cnt restarts at 0 on a new page This will be used to store the tagabspage attribute retrieved from a label.

```
8 \tl_new:N \l\_tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
```

(End definition for \l\\_tag\\_mc\\_ref\\_abspage\\_tl.)

\l\\_tag\\_mc\\_tmpa\\_tl temporary variable

```
9 \tl_new:N \l\_tag_mc_tmpa_tl
```

(End definition for \l\\_tag\\_mc\\_tmpa\\_tl.)

\g\\_tag\\_mc\\_marks a marks register to keep track of the mc's at page breaks and a sequence to keep track of the data for the continuation extra-tmb. We probably will need to track mc-marks in more than one stream, so the seq contains the name of the stream.

```
10 \newmarks \g\_tag\_mc\_marks
```

(End definition for \g\\_tag\\_mc\\_marks.)

\g\\_tag\\_mc\\_main\\_marks\\_seq Each stream has an associated global seq variable holding the bottom marks from the/a previous chunk in the stream. We provide three by default: main, footnote and multicol. TODO: perhaps an interface for more streams will be needed.

```
11 \seq_new:N \g\_tag\_mc\_main\_marks\_seq
12 \seq_new:N \g\_tag\_mc\_footnote\_marks\_seq
13 \seq_new:N \g\_tag\_mc\_multicol\_marks\_seq
```

*(End definition for \g\_\_tag\_mc\_main\_marks\_seq, \g\_\_tag\_mc\_footnote\_marks\_seq, and \g\_\_tag\_mc\_multicol\_marks\_seq.)*

\l\_\_tag\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq The marks content contains a number of data which we will have to access and compare, so we will store it locally in two sequences. topmarks is unusable in LaTeX so we ignore it.

```
14 \seq_new:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
15 \seq_new:N \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
```

*(End definition for \l\_\_tag\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq and \l\_\_tag\_mc\_botmarks\_seq.)*

## 1.2 Functions

\\_\_tag\_mc\_begin\_marks:nn Generic mode need to set marks for the page break and split stream handling. We always set two marks to be able to detect the case when no mark is on a page/galley. MC-begin commands will set (b,-,data) and (b,+,data), MC-end commands will set (e,-,data) and (e,+,data).

```
16 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 label
17 {
18     \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
19     {
20         b-, %first of begin pair
21         \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
22         \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
23         #1, %tag
24         \bool_if:NT \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool{stash}, % stash info
25         #2, %label
26     }
27     \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
28     {
29         b+, % second of begin pair
30         \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
31         \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
32         #1, %tag
33         \bool_if:NT \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool{stash}, % stash info
34         #2, %label
35     }
36 }
37 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn {oo}
38 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n #1 %#1 type
39 {
40     \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
41     {
42         b-, %first of begin pair
43         \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
44         -1, %structure num
45         #1 %type
46     }
47     \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
48     {
49         b+, %first of begin pair
50         \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
51         -1, %structure num
```

```

52         #1  %Type
53     }
54 }
55
56 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_end_marks:
57 {
58     \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
59     {
60         e-, %first of end pair
61         \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
62         \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
63     }
64     \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
65     {
66         e+, %second of end pair
67         \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
68         \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
69     }
70 }
```

(End definition for `\__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn`, `\__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n`, and `\__tag_mc_end_marks:..`)

`\__tag_mc_disable_marks:`: This disables the marks. They can't be reenabled, so it should only be used in groups.

```

71 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_disable_marks:
72 {
73     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn \use_none:nn
74     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n \use_none:n
75     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_end_marks: \prg_do_nothing:
76 }
```

(End definition for `\__tag_mc_disable_marks:..`)

`\__tag_mc_get_marks:`: This stores the current content of the marks in the sequences. It naturally should only be used in places where it makes sense.

```

77 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_get_marks:
78 {
79     \exp_args:NNx
80     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
81     { \tex_firstmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
82     \exp_args:NNx
83     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
84     { \tex_botmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
85 }
```

(End definition for `\__tag_mc_get_marks:..`)

`\__tag_mc_store:nnn`: This inserts the mc-chunk  $\langle mc\text{-}num \rangle$  into the structure struct-num after the  $\langle mc\text{-}prev \rangle$ . The structure must already exist. The additional mcid dictionary is stored in a property. The item is retrieved when the kid entry is built. We test if there is already an addition and append if needed.

```

86 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_store:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 mc-prev, #2 mc-num #3 structure-
87 num
88 {
```

```

88  \%prop_show:N \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop
89  \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
90  {
91      \prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl \__tag_struct_mc_id_d}
92  }
93  {
94      \prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1}{\__tag_struct_mc_id_dict:n {#2}}
95  }
96  \prop_gput:Nxx \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
97  {#2}
98  {#3}
99 }
100 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_store:nnn {xxx}

(End definition for \__tag_mc_store:nnn.)

```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tmb:n  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tme:n

These two functions should be used in the output routine at the place where a mc-literal could be missing due to a page break or some other split. They check (with the help of the marks) if a extra-tmb or extra-tme is needed. The tmb command stores also the mc into the structure, the tme has to store the data for a following extra-tmb. The argument takes a stream name like main or footnote to allow different handling there. The content of the marks must be stored before (with \@@\_mc\_get\_marks: or manually) into \l\_@@\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq and \l\_@@\_mc\_botmarks\_seq so that the tests can use them.

```

101 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n #1 % #1 stream: e.g. main or footnote
102 {
103     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ first~ \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {,~}}
104     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ bot~ \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {,~}}
105     \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF
106     {
107         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TMB~ ~ missing~ --- inserted}
108         %test if artifact
109         \int_compare:nNnTF { \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {3} } = {-
110             1}
111             {
112                 \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {4} }
113                 \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
114             }
115             {
116                 \exp_args:Nx
117                 \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n
118                 {
119                     \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {4}
120                 }
121                 \str_if_eq:eeTF
122                 {
123                     \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {5}
124                 }
125                 {
126                     %store
127                     \__tag_mc_store:xxx
128                     {
129                         \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {2}

```

```

130      }
131 { \int_eval:n{\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int} }
132 {
133     \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {3}
134 }
135 }
136 {
137     %stashed -> warning!!
138 }
139 }
140 }
141 {
142     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TMB~ not~ missing}
143 }
144 }

145 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n #1 % #1 stream, eg. main or footnote
146 {
147     \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF
148 {
149     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TME~ ~ missing~ --- inserted}
150     \__tag_mc_emc:
151     \seq_gset_eq:cN
152         { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq }
153     \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
154 }
155 }
156 {
157     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TME~ not~ missing}
158 }
159 }

```

(End definition for `\__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n` and `\__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n`.)

### 1.3 Looking at MC marks in boxes

`\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn` Assumptions:

- test for tagging active outside;
- mark retrieval also outside.

This takes a box register as its first argument (or the register number in a count register, as used by `multicol`). It adds an extra tmb at the top of the box if necessary and similarly an extra tme at the end. This is done by adding hboxes in a way that the positioning and the baseline of the given box is not altered. The result is written back to the box.

The second argument is the stream this box belongs to and is currently either `main` for the main galley, `footnote` for footnote note text, or `multicol` for boxes produced for columns in that environment. Other streams may follow over time.

```

160 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn #1 #2 {
161     \vbadness \OM
162     \vfuzz \c_max_dim
163     \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn #1 { \box_ht:N #1 } {
164         \hbox_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box { \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n {#2} }

```

```

165      \hbox_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box { \_tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n {#2} }
166      \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
167      {
168          \seq_log:c { g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq }
169      }

```

The box placed on the top gets zero size and thus will not affect the box dimensions of the box we are modifying.

```

170      \box_set_ht:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_zero_dim
171      \box_set_dp:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_zero_dim

```

The box added at the bottom will get the depth of the original box. This way we can arrange that from the outside everything looks as before.

```

172      \box_set_ht:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box \c_zero_dim
173      \box_set_dp:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box { \box_dp:N #1 }

```

We need to set `\boxmaxdepth` in case the original box has an unusually large depth, otherwise that depth is not preserved when we string things together.

```

174      \boxmaxdepth \cmaxdepth
175      \box_use_drop:N \l__tag_tmpa_box
176      \vbox_unpack_drop:N #1

```

Back up by the depth of the box as we add that later again.

```

177      \tex_kern:D -\box_dp:N \l__tag_tmpb_box

```

And we don't want any glue added when we add the box.

```

178      \nointerlineskip
179      \box_use_drop:N \l__tag_tmpb_box
180      }
181  }

```

*(End definition for `\_tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn`.)*

`\_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn`

This is the main command to add mc to the stream. It is therefore guarded by the mc-boolean.

If we aren't in the main stream then processing is a bit more complicated because to get at the marks in the box we need to artificially split it and then look at the split marks.

First argument is the box to update and the second is the "stream". In lua mode the command is a no-op.

```

182 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn #1#2
183 {
184     \_tag_check_if_active_mc:T {

```

First set up a temp box for trial splitting.

```

185     \vbadness\maxdimen
186     \box_set_eq:NN \l__tag_tmpa_box #1

```

Split the box to the largest size available. This should give us all content (but to be sure that there is no issue we could test out test box is empty now (not done)).

```

187     \vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_box \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_max_dim

```

As a side effect of this split we should now have the first and bottom split marks set up. We use this to set up `\l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq`

```

188     \exp_args:NNx
189     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
190         { \tex_splitfirstmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }

```

Some debugging info:

```
191 %     \iow_term:n { First~ mark~ from~ this~ box: }
192 %     \seq_log:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
```

If this mark was empty then clearly the bottom mark will too be empty. Thus in this case we make use of the saved bot mark from the previous chunk. Note that if this is the first chunk in the stream the global seq would contain a random value, but then we can't end in this branch because the basis assumption is that streams are properly marked up so the first chunk would always have a mark at the beginning!

```
193     \seq_if_empty:NTF \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
194     {
195         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n
196         {
197             No~ marks~ so~ use~ saved~ bot~ mark:~
198             \seq_use:cn {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq} {,-} \iow_newline:
199         }
200         \seq_set_eq:Nc \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq}
```

We also update the bot mark to the same value so that we can later apply `\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn` with the data structures in place (see assumptions made there).

```
201     \seq_set_eq:NN \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
202 }
```

If there was a first mark then there is also a bot mark (and it can't be the same as our marks always come in pairs). So if that branch is chosen we update `\l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq` from the bot mark.

```
203     {
204         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n
205         {
206             Pick~ up~ new~ bot~ mark!
207         }
208         \exp_args:NNx
209         \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
210             { \tex_splitbotmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
211     }
```

Finally we call `\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn` to add any missing tmb/tme as needed,

```
212     \__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn #1 {#2}
213 %%     \seq_gset_eq:cN {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq} \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
214 %%     }
215     }
216 }
217 }
```

*(End definition for `\__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn`.)*

`\__tag_mc_if_in_p:` This is a test if a mc is open or not. It depends simply on a global boolean: mc-chunks are added linearly so nesting should not be relevant.

`\tag_mc_if_in_p:` One exception are header and footer (perhaps they are more, but for now it doesn't seem so, so there are no dedicated code to handle this situation): When they are built and added to the page we could be both inside or outside a mc-chunk. But header and footer should ignore this and not push/pop or warn about nested mc. It is therefore important there to set and reset the boolean manually. See the tagpddocu-patches.sty for an example.

```

218 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \__tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
219 {
220     \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_in_mc_bool
221     { \prg_return_true: }
222     { \prg_return_false: }
223 }
224
225 \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \tag_mc_if_in: \__tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
(End definition for \__tag_mc_if_in:TF and \tag_mc_if_in:TF. This function is documented on page
45.)

```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc:n  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_emc:  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc:nn  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc:nx

These are the low-level commands. There are now equal to the pdfmanagement commands generic mode, but we use an indirection in case luamode need something else. change 04.08.2018: the commands do not check the validity of the arguments or try to escape them, this should be done before using them.

```

226 % #1 tag, #2 properties
227 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_bmc:n \pdf_bmc:n
228 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_emc: \pdf_emc:
229 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_bdc:nn \pdf_bdc:nn
230 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_bdc:nn {nx}

```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc:n, \\_\_tag\_mc\_emc:, and \\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc:nn.)

\\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:nn  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:n  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mcid:nn  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mcid:VV

This create a BDC mark with an /MCID key. Most of the work here is to get the current number value for the MCID: they must be numbered by page starting with 0 and then successively. The first argument is the tag, e.g. P or Span, the second is used to pass more properties. We also define a wrapper around the low-level command as luamode will need something different.

```

231 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn #1 #2
232 {
233     \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
234     \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
235     {
236         \__tag_ref_value:enn %3 args
237         {
238             \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
239         }
240         { tagabspage }
241         {-1}
242     }
243     \prop_get:NoNTF
244     \g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
245     {
246         \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
247     }
248     \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl
249     {
250         %key already present, use value for MCID and add 1 for the next
251         \int_gset:Nn \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int { \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl }
252         \__tag_prop_gput:Nxx
253         \g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
254         { \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl }
255         { \int_eval:n { \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl +1 } }

```

```

256     }
257     {
258         %key not present, set MCID to 0 and insert 1
259         \int_gzero:N \g_tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int
260         \__tag_prop_gput:Nxx
261             \g_tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
262             { \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl }
263             {1}
264     }
265     \__tag_ref_label:en
266     {
267         mcid-\int_use:N \c@g_tag_MCID_abs_int
268     }
269     { mc }
270     \__tag_mc_bdc:nx
271     {#1}
272     { /MCID~\int_eval:n { \g_tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int }~ \exp_not:n { #2 } }
273 }
274 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n #1
275 {
276     \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn {#1} {}
277 }
278
279 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 properties
280 {
281     \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn {#1} {#2}
282 }
283
284 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn {VV}

(End definition for \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn, \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n, and \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn.)

```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:n  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:x

This is the handler which puts a mc into the the current structure. The argument is the number of the mc. Beside storing the mc into the structure, it also has to record the structure for the parent tree. The name is a bit confusing, it does *not* handle mc with the stash key .... TODO: why does luamode use it for begin + use, but generic mode only for begin?

```

285 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n #1 %1 mcidnum
286 {
287     \__tag_check_mc_used:n {#1}
288     \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn
289     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
290     {#1}
291     \prop_gput:Nxx \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
292     {#1}
293     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
294 }
295 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n { x }

(End definition for \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n.)

```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:n  
\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_artifact:N

Two commands to create artifacts, one without type, and one with. We define also a wrapper handler as luamode will need a different definition. TODO: perhaps later: more properties for artifacts

```

296 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:
297 {
298     \__tag_mc_bmc:n {Artifact}
299 }
300 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n #1
301 {
302     \__tag_mc_bdc:nn {Artifact}{/Type/#1}
303 }
304 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N #1
305     % #1 is a var containing the artifact type
306 {
307     \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
308     \tl_if_empty:NTF #1
309         { \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact: }
310         { \exp_args:N\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n #1 }
311 }

```

(End definition for `\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:`, `\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n`, and `\__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N`.)

`\__tag_get_data_mc_tag:` This allows to retrieve the active mc-tag. It is use by the get command.

```
312 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_get_data_mc_tag: { \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
```

(End definition for `\__tag_get_data_mc_tag:.`)

`\tag_mc_begin:n` These are the core public commands to open and close an mc. They don't need to be in the same group or grouping level, but the code expect that they are issued linearly. The tag and the state is passed to the end command through a global var and a global boolean.

```

313 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin:n #1 %#1 keyval
314 {
315     \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
316     {
317         \group_begin: %hm
318         \__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
319         \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
320         \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc } {#1}
321         \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
322             { %handle artifact
323                 \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
324                 \exp_args:NV
325                 \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
326             }
327             { %handle mcid type
328                 \__tag_check_mc_tag:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
329                 \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:VV
330                     \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
331                     \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl
332                     \__tag_mc_begin_marks:oo{\l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl}{\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
333                     \tl_if_empty:NF {\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
334                     {
335                         \exp_args:NV
336                         \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl
337                     }

```

```

338         \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
339         {
340             \__tag_mc_handle_stash:x { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
341         }
342     }
343     \group_end:
344 }
345 }
346 \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
347 {
348     \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
349     {
350         \__tag_check_mc_if_open:
351         \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
352         \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
353         \__tag_mc_emc:
354         \__tag_mc_end_marks:
355     }
356 }

```

(End definition for `\tag_mc_begin:n` and `\tag_mc_end:`. These functions are documented on page 45.)

## 1.4 Keys

Definitions are different in luamode. `tag` and `raw` are expanded as `\lua_now:e` in lua does it too and we assume that their values are safe.

```

tag
raw
357 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
alttext
358 {
actualtext
359     tag .code:n = % the name (H,P,Span) etc
label
360     {
artifact
361         \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
362         \tl_gset:Nx \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
363     },
364     raw .code:n =
365     {
366         \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { #1 }
367     },
368     alttext .code:n      = % Alt property
369     {
370         \str_set_convert:Noon
371         \l__tag_tmpa_str
372         { #1 }
373         { default }
374         { utf16/hex }
375         \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
376         \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
377     },
378     actualtext .code:n      = % ActualText property
379     {
380         \str_set_convert:Noon
381         \l__tag_tmpa_str
382         { #1 }

```

```

383     { default }
384     { utf16/hex }
385     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /ActualText~< }
386     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
387   },
388   label .tl_set:N      = \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl,
389   artifact .code:n     =
390   {
391     \exp_args:Nnx
392     \keys_set:nn
393     { __tag / mc }
394     { __artifact-bool, __artifact-type=#1 }
395   },
396   artifact .default:n  = {notype}
397 }
398 
```

(End definition for `tag` and others. These functions are documented on page 72.)

## Part VI

# The **tagpdf-mc-luamode** module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), luamode-specific Part of the tagpdf package

The code is splitted into three parts: code shared by all engines, code specific to luamode and code not used by luamode.

## 1 Marked content code – luamode code

luamode uses attributes to mark mc-chunks. The two attributes used are defined in the backend file. The backend also load the lua file, as it can contain functions needed elsewhere. The attributes for mc are global (between 0.6 and 0.81 they were local but this was reverted). The attributes are setup only in lua, and one should use the lua functions to set and get them.

`g_@@_mc_type_attr`: the value represent the type

`g_@@_mc_cnt_attr`: will hold the `\c@g_@@_MCID_abs_int` value

Handling attribute needs a different system to number the page wise mcid's: a `\tagmcbegin` ... `\tagmcend` pair no longer surrounds exactly one mc chunk: it can be split at page breaks. We know the included mcid(s) only after the ship out. So for the `struct` → `mcid` mapping we need to record `struct` → `mc-cnt` (in `\g_@@_mc_parenttree_prop` and/or a lua table and at shipout `mc-cnt-> {mcid, mcid, ...}`) and when building the trees connect both.

Key definitions are overwritten for luatex to store that data in lua-tables. The data for the mc are in `ltx.@@.mc[absnum]`. The fields of the table are:

`tag`: the type (a string)

`raw`: more properties (string)

`label`: a string.

`artifact`: the presence indicates an artifact, the value (string) is the type.

`kids`: a array of tables

`{1={kid=num2,page=pagenum1}, 2={kid=num2,page=pagenum2},...},`

this describes the chunks the mc has been split to by the traversing code

`parent`: the number of the structure it is in. Needed to build the parent tree.

```
1 <@=tag>
2 {*luamode}
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-lua} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4   {tagpdf - mc code only for the luamode }
5 </luamode>
```

The main function which wanders through the shipout box to inject the literals. if the new callback is there, it is used.

```
6 {*luamode}
7 \hook_gput_code:n{begindocument}{tagpdf/mc}
8 {
```

```

9   \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_space_bool
10  {
11    \lua_now:e
12    {
13      if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
14        luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_shipout_filter", function(TAGBOX)~
15          ltx._tag.func.space_chars_shipout(TAGBOX)~return~true~
16          end, "tagpdf")~
17        end
18    }
19    \lua_now:e
20    {
21      if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
22        token.get_next()~
23        end
24    } \secondoftwo\gobble
25    {
26      \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before}{tagpdf/lua}
27      {
28        \lua_now:e
29        { ltx._tag.func.space_chars_shipout (tex.box["ShipoutBox"]) }
30      }
31    }
32  }
33 \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_mc_bool
34 {
35   \lua_now:e
36   {
37     if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
38       luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_shipout_filter", function(TAGBOX)~
39         ltx._tag.func.mark_shipout(TAGBOX)~return~true~
40         end, "tagpdf")~
41       end
42   }
43   \lua_now:e
44   {
45     if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
46       token.get_next()~
47       end
48    } \secondoftwo\gobble
49    {
50      \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before}{tagpdf/lua}
51      {
52        \lua_now:e
53        { ltx._tag.func.mark_shipout (tex.box["ShipoutBox"]) }
54      }
55    }
56  }
57 }

```

## 1.1 Commands

\\_tag\\_add\\_missing\\_mcs\\_to\\_stream:Nn  
This command is used in the output routine by the ptagging code. It should do nothing in luamode.

```

58 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn #1#2 {}
(End definition for \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn.)

\__tag_mc_if_in: This tests, if we are in an mc, for attributes this means to check against a number.
\tag_mc_if_in: 59 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \__tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
60 {
61     \int_compare:nNnTF
62     { -2147483647 }
63     =
64     {\lua_now:e
65         {
66             tex.print(tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr))
67         }
68     }
69     { \prg_return_false: }
70     { \prg_return_true: }
71 }
72
73 \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \tag_mc_if_in: \__tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
(End definition for \__tag_mc_if_in: and \tag_mc_if_in:. This function is documented on page ??.)
```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_lua\_set\_mc\_type\_attr:n \\_\_tag\_mc\_lua\_set\_mc\_type\_attr:o \\_\_tag\_mc\_lua\_unset\_mc\_type\_attr:

```

74 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n % #1 is a tag name
75 {
76     %TODO ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from("#1") seems not to return a suitable number??
77     \tl_set:Nx\l__tag_tmpa_tl{\lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from ("#1")} }
78     \lua_now:e
79     {
80         tex.setattribute
81         (
82             "global",
83             luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr,
84             \l__tag_tmpa_tl
85         )
86     }
87     \lua_now:e
88     {
89         tex.setattribute
90         (
91             "global",
92             luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr,
93             \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:
94         )
95     }
96 }
97
98 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n { o }
99
100 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
101 {
102     \lua_now:e
```

```

103 {
104     tex.setattribute
105     (
106         "global",
107         luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr,
108         -2147483647
109     )
110 }
111 \lua_now:e
112 {
113     tex.setattribute
114     (
115         "global",
116         luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr,
117         -2147483647
118     )
119 }
120 }
121

(End definition for \__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n and \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:..)

```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcids:n \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcids:s These commands will in the finish code replace the dummy for a mc by the real mcids we need a variant for the case that it is the only kid, to get the array right

```

122 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_insert_mcids:n
123 {
124     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (#1,0) }
125 }
126
127 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_insert_mcids:s
128 {
129     \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (#1,1) }
130 }

```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcids:n and \\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_mcids:s.)

\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:n \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:x This is the lua variant for the command to put an mcid absolute number in the current structure.

```

131 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n %1 mcidnum
132 {
133     \__tag_check_mc_used:n { #1 }
134     \seq_gput_right:cn % Don't fill a lua table due to the command in the item,
135                         % so use the kernel command
136     { g__tag_struct_kids_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _seq }
137     {
138         \__tag_mc_insert_mcids:n {#1}%
139     }
140     \lua_now:e
141     {
142         ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs
143         (
144             \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl,#1
145         )
146     }

```

```

147   \prop_gput:Nxx
148     \g_tag_mc_parenttree_prop
149     { #1 }
150     { \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
151   }
152
153 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n { x }

```

(End definition for `\__tag_mc_handle_stash:n`.)

**\tag\_mc\_begin:n** This is the lua version of the user command. We currently don't check if there is nesting as it doesn't matter so much in lua.

```

154 \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_mc_begin:n
155   {
156     \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
157     {
158       \group_begin:
159       \%__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
160       \bool_gset_true:N \g_tag_in_mc_bool
161       \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
162       \tl_clear:N \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl
163       \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
164       \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc }{ label={}, #1 }
165       %check that a tag or artifact has been used
166       \__tag_check_mc_tag:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
167       %set the attributes:
168       \__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:o { \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
169       \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
170         { % store the absolute num name in a label:
171           \tl_if_empty:NF { \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl }
172             {
173               \exp_args:NV
174                 \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl
175             }
176             % if not stashed record the absolute number
177             \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
178               {
179                 \__tag_mc_handle_stash:x { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
180               }
181             }
182           \group_end:
183         }
184   }

```

(End definition for `\tag_mc_begin:n`. This function is documented on page 45.)

**\tag\_mc\_end:** TODO: check how the use command must be guarded.

```

185 \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
186   {
187     \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
188     {
189       \%__tag_check_mc_if_open:
190       \bool_gset_false:N \g_tag_in_mc_bool
191       \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool

```

```

192     \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
193     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
194     \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
195   }
196 }

```

(End definition for `\tag_mc_end`. This function is documented on page 45.)

`\__tag_get_data_mc_tag`: The command to retrieve the current mc tag. TODO: Perhaps this should use the attribute instead.

```
197 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_mc_tag: { \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
```

(End definition for `\__tag_get_data_mc_tag`.)

## 1.2 Key definitions

```

tag TODO: check conversion, check if local/global setting is right.
raw 198 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
alttext 199 {
actualtext 200   tag .code:n = %
label 201   {
artifact 202     \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
203     \tl_gset:Nx \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
204     \lua_now:e
205     {
206       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:, "tag", "#1")
207     }
208   },
209   raw .code:n =
210   {
211     \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { #1 }
212     \lua_now:e
213     {
214       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:, "raw", "#1")
215     }
216   },
217   alttext .code:n      = % Alt property
218   {
219     \str_set_convert:NoN
220     \l__tag_tmpa_str
221     { #1 }
222     { default }
223     { utf16/hex }
224     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
225     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
226     \lua_now:e
227     {
228       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
229       (
230         \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:, "alt", "/Alt~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>" )
231     }
232   },
233   actualtext .code:n      = % Alt property
234 
```

```

235   {
236     \str_set_convert:Noon
237     \l__tag_tmpa_str
238     { #1 }
239     { default }
240     { utf16/hex }
241     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
242     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
243     \lua_now:e
244     {
245       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
246       (
247         \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:, "actualtext",
248         "/ActualText~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>" )
249       )
250     }
251   },
252   label .code:n =
253   {
254     \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_mc_label_tl { #1 }
255     \lua_now:e
256     {
257       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
258       (
259         \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"label", "#1"
260       )
261     }
262   },
263   _artifact-store .code:n =
264   {
265     \lua_now:e
266     {
267       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
268       (
269         \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"artifact", "#1"
270       )
271     }
272   },
273   _,
274   artifact .code:n      =
275   {
276     \exp_args:Nnx
277     \keys_set:nn
278     { __tag / mc }
279     { __artifact-bool, __artifact-type=#1, tag=Artifact }
280     \exp_args:Nnx
281     \keys_set:nn
282     { __tag / mc }
283     { __artifact-store=\l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl }
284   },
285   artifact .default:n    = { notype }
286 }
287
288 </luamode>

```

*(End definition for `tag` and others. These functions are documented on page [72](#).)*

# Part VII

## The **tagpdf-struct** module

### Commands to create the structure

### Part of the tagpdf package

## 1 Public Commands

---

```
\tag_struct_begin:n \tag_struct_begin:n{\langle key-values\rangle}
\tag_struct_end: \tag_struct_end:
```

These commands start and end a new structure. They don't start a group. They set all their values globally.

---

```
\tag_struct_use:n \tag_struct_use:n{\langle label\rangle}
```

These commands insert a structure previously stashed away as kid into the currently active structure. A structure should be used only once, if the structure already has a parent a warning is issued.

The following two functions are used to add annotations. They must be used together and with care to get the same numbers. Perhaps some improvements are needed here.

---

```
\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn \tag_struct_insert_annot:nn{\langle object reference\rangle}{\langle struct parent number\rangle}
```

This inserts an annotation in the structure. *[object reference](#)* is there reference to the annotation. *[struct parent number](#)* should be the same number as had been inserted with `\tag_struct_parent_int:` as `StructParent` value to the dictionary of the annotation. The command will increase the value of the counter used by `\tag_struct_parent_int::`.

---

```
\tag_struct_parent_int: \tag_struct_parent_int:
```

This gives back the next free /StructParent number (assuming that it is together with `\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` which will increase the number).

## 2 Public keys

### 2.1 Keys for the structure commands

---

**tag** This is required. The value of the key is normally one of the standard types listed in section [??](#). It is possible to setup new tags/types. The value can also be of the form `type/NS`, where `NS` is the shorthand of a declared name space. Currently the names spaces `pdf`, `pdf2`, `mathml` and `user` are defined. This allows to use a different name space than the one connected by default to the tag. But normally this should not be needed.

**stash** Normally a new structure inserts itself as a kid into the currently active structure. This key prohibits this. The structure is nevertheless from now on “the current active structure” and parent for following marked content and structures.

**label** This key sets a label by which one can use the structure later in another structure. Internally the label name will start with `tagpdfstruct-`.

**title** This key allows to set the dictionary entry `/Title` in the structure object. The value **title-o** is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. Commands are not expanded. **title-o** will expand the value once.

**alttext** This key inserts an `/Alt` value in the dictionary of structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. The value will be expanded first once.

**actualtext** This key inserts an `/ActualText` value in the dictionary of structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. The value will be expanded first once.

**lang** This key allows to set the language for a structure element. The value should be a bcp-identifier, e.g. `de-De`.

**ref** This key allows to add references to other structure elements, it adds the `/Ref` array to the structure. The value should be a comma separated list of structure labels set with the `label` key. e.g. `ref={label1,label2}`.

**E** This key sets the `/E` key, the expanded form of an abbreviation or an acronym (I couldn’t think of a better name, so I stucked to E).

**AF** `AF = <object name>`  
**AFinline** `AF-inline = <text content>`

**AFinline-o** These keys allows to reference an associated file in the structure element. The value `<object name>` should be the name of an object pointing to the `/Filespec` dictionary as expected by `\pdf_object_ref:n` from a current 13kernel.

The value `AF-inline` is some text, which is embedded in the PDF as a text file with mime type `text/plain`. `AF-inline-o` is like `AF-inline` but expands the value once.

Future versions will perhaps extend this to more mime types, but it is still a research task to find out what is really needed.

---

**attribute** This key takes as argument a comma list of attribute names (use braces to protect the commas from the external key-val parser) and allows to add one or more attribute dictionary entries in the structure object. As an example

```
\tagstructbegin{tag=TH,attribute= TH-row}
```

Attribute names and their content must be declared first in \tagpdfsetup.

---

**attribute-class** This key takes as argument a comma list of attribute class names (use braces to protect the commas from the external key-val parser) and allows to add one or more attribute classes to the structure object.

Attribute class names and their content must be declared first in \tagpdfsetup.

## 2.2 Setup keys

---

**newattribute** newattribute = {<name>}{<Content>}

This key can be used in the setup command \tagpdfsetup and allow to declare a new attribute, which can be used as attribute or attribute class. The value are two brace groups, the first contains the name, the second the content.

```
\tagpdfsetup
{
    newattribute =
        {TH-col}{/0 /Table /Scope /Column},
    newattribute =
        {TH-row}{/0 /Table /Scope /Row},
}

1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-struct-code} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to storing structure}
5 </header>
```

## 3 Variables

\c@g\_\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int Every structure will have a unique, absolute number. I will use a latex counter for the structure count to have a chance to avoid double structures in align etc.

```
6 <*package>
7 \newcounter { g__tag_struct_abs_int }
8 \int_gzero:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
```

(End definition for \c@g\_\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int.)

\g\_\_tag\_struct\_objR\_seq a sequence to store mapping between the structure number and the object number. We assume that structure numbers are assign consecutively and so the index of the seq can be used. A seq allows easy mapping over the structures.

```
9 \__tag_seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_objR_seq
```

(End definition for \g\_tag\_struct\_objR\_seq.)

\g\_tag\_struct\_cont\_mc\_prop

in generic mode it can happen after a page break that we have to inject into a structure sequence an additional mc after. We will store this additional info in a property. The key is the absolut mc num, the value the pdf directory.

10 \\_\_tag\_prop\_new:N \g\_tag\_struct\_cont\_mc\_prop

(End definition for \g\_tag\_struct\_cont\_mc\_prop.)

\g\_tag\_struct\_stack\_seq

A stack sequence for the structure stack. When a sequence is opened it's number is put on the stack.

11 \seq\_new:N \g\_tag\_struct\_stack\_seq

12 \seq\_gpush:Nn \g\_tag\_struct\_stack\_seq {0}

(End definition for \g\_tag\_struct\_stack\_seq.)

\g\_tag\_struct\_tag\_stack\_seq

We will perhaps also need the tags. While it is possible to get them from the numbered stack, lets build a tag stack too.

13 \seq\_new:N \g\_tag\_struct\_tag\_stack\_seq

14 \seq\_gpush:Nn \g\_tag\_struct\_tag\_stack\_seq {Root}

(End definition for \g\_tag\_struct\_tag\_stack\_seq.)

\g\_tag\_struct\_stack\_current\_t1  
\l\_tag\_struct\_stack\_parent\_tmpa\_t1

The global variable will hold the current structure number. The local temporary variable will hold the parent when we fetch it from the stack.

15 \t1\_new:N \g\_tag\_struct\_stack\_current\_t1

16 \t1\_new:N \l\_tag\_struct\_stack\_parent\_tmpa\_t1

(End definition for \g\_tag\_struct\_stack\_current\_t1 and \l\_tag\_struct\_stack\_parent\_tmpa\_t1.)

I will need at least one structure: the StructTreeRoot normally it should have only one kid, e.g. the document element.

The data of the StructTreeRoot and the StructElem are in properties: \g\_@@\_struct\_0\_prop for the root and \g\_@@\_struct\_N\_prop,  $N \geq 1$  for the other.

This creates quite a number of properties, so perhaps we will have to do this more efficiently in the future.

All properties have at least the keys

Type StructTreeRoot or StructElem

and the keys from the two following lists (the root has a special set of properties). the values of the prop should be already escaped properly when the entries are created (title,lange,alt,E,actualtext)

\c\_tag\_struct\_StructTreeRoot\_entries\_seq  
\c\_tag\_struct\_StructElem\_entries\_seq

These seq contain the keys we support in the two object types. They are currently no longer used, but are provided as documentation and for potential future checks. They should be adapted if there are changes in the PDF format.

17 \seq\_const\_from\_clist:Nn \c\_tag\_struct\_StructTreeRoot\_entries\_seq

18 f%p. 857/858

19 Type, % always /StructTreeRoot

20 K, % kid, dictionary or array of dictionaries

21 IDTree, % currently unused

22 ParentTree, % required,obj ref to the parent tree

23 ParentTreeNextKey, % optional

24 RoleMap,

```

25     ClassMap,
26     Namespaces
27 }
28
29 \seq_const_from_clist:Nn \c__tag_struct_StructElem_entries_seq
30 !%p 858 f
31     Type,           %always /StructElem
32     S,              %tag/type
33     P,              %parent
34     ID,             %optional
35     Ref,            %optional, pdf 2.0 Use?
36     Pg,             %obj num of starting page, optional
37     K,              %kids
38     A,              %attributes, probably unused
39     C,              %class ""
40     %R,             %attribute revision number, irrelevant for us as we
41             % don't update/change existing PDF and (probably)
42             % deprecated in PDF 2.0
43     T,              %title, value in () or <>
44     Lang,            %language
45     Alt,             % value in () or <>
46     E,              % abbreviation
47     ActualText,
48     AF,             %pdf 2.0, array of dict, associated files
49     NS,             %pdf 2.0, dict, namespace
50     PhoneticAlphabet, %pdf 2.0
51     Phoneme          %pdf 2.0
52 }
53 (End definition for \c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_entries_seq and \c__tag_struct_StructElem-
54 entries_seq.)
```

### 3.1 Variables used by the keys

\g\_\_tag\_struct\_tag\_tl Use by the tag key to store the tag and the namespace.

```

\g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
53 \tl_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
54 \tl_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
```

(End definition for \g\_\_tag\_struct\_tag\_tl and \g\_\_tag\_struct\_tag\_NS\_tl.)

\l\_\_tag\_struct\_key\_label\_tl This will hold the label value.

```

55 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_key_label_tl
```

(End definition for \l\_\_tag\_struct\_key\_label\_tl.)

\l\_\_tag\_struct\_elem\_stash\_bool This will keep track of the stash status

```

56 \bool_new:N \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
```

(End definition for \l\_\_tag\_struct\_elem\_stash\_bool.)

## 4 Commands

The properties must be in some places handled expandably. So I need an output handler for each prop, to get expandable output see <https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/424208>. There is probably room here for a more efficient implementation. TODO check if this can now be implemented with the pdfdict commands. The property contains currently non pdf keys, but e.g. object numbers are perhaps no longer needed as we have named object anyway.

```
\_\_tag\_struct\_output\_prop\_aux:nn
\_\_tag\_new\_output\_prop\_handler:n
57 \cs_new:Npn \_\_tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn #1 #2 %#1 num, #2 key
58 {
59   \prop_if_in:cNT
60   { g\_tag_struct_#1_prop }
61   { #2 }
62   {
63     \c_space_tl/#2~ \prop_item:cn{ g\_tag_struct_#1_prop } { #2 }
64   }
65 }
66
67 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_new_output_prop_handler:n #1
68 {
69   \cs_new:cn { \_\_tag_struct_output_prop:#1:n }
70   {
71     \_\_tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn {#1}{##1}
72   }
73 }
```

(End definition for \\_\\_tag\_struct\_output\_prop\_aux:nn and \\_\\_tag\_new\_output\_prop\_handler:n.)

### 4.1 Initialization of the StructTreeRoot

The first structure element, the StructTreeRoot is special, so created manually. The underlying object is @@/struct/0 which is currently created in the tree code (TODO move it here). The ParentTree and RoleMap entries are added at begin document in the tree code as they refer to object which are setup in other parts of the code. This avoid timing issues.

```
74 \t1_gset:Nn \g\_tag_struct_stack_current_t1 {0}

g\_tag_struct_0_prop
g\_tag_struct_kids_0_seq
75 \_\_tag_prop_new:c { g\_tag_struct_0_prop }
76 \_\_tag_new_output_prop_handler:n {0}
77 \_\_tag_seq_new:c { g\_tag_struct_kids_0_seq }
78
79 \_\_tag_prop_gput:cnn
80 { g\_tag_struct_0_prop }
81 { Type }
82 { /StructTreeRoot }
83
84
85
```

Namespaces are pdf 2.0 but it doesn't harm to have an empty entry. We could add a test, but if the code moves into the kernel, timing could get tricky.

```

86 \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
87 { g__tag_struct_0_prop }
88 { Namespaces }
89 { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/namespaces } }

(End definition for g__tag_struct_0_prop and g__tag_struct_kids_0_seq.)
```

## 4.2 Handlings kids

Commands to store the kids. Kids in a structure can be a reference to a mc-chunk, an object reference to another structure element, or a object reference to an annotation (through an OBJR object).

```
\__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn
\__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:xx
```

The command to store an mc-chunk, this is a dictionary of type MCR. It would be possible to write out the content directly as unnamed object and to store only the object reference, but probably this would be slower, and the PDF is more readable like this. The code doesn't try to avoid the use of the /Pg key by checking page numbers. That imho only slows down without much gain. In generic mode the page break code will perhaps to have to insert an additional mcid after an existing one. For this we use a property list At first an auxiliary to write the MCID dict. This should normally be expanded!

```

90 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n #1 %#1 MCID absnum
91 {
92     <<
93     /Type \c_space_t1 /MCR \c_space_t1
94     /Pg
95     \c_space_t1
96     \pdf_pageobject_ref:n { \__tag_ref_value:enn{mcid-#1}{tagabspage}{1} }
97     /MCID \c_space_t1 \__tag_ref_value:enn{mcid-#1}{tagmcid}{1}
98     >>
99 }

100 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn #1 #2 %#1 structure num, #2 MCID absnum
101 {
102     \__tag_seq_gput_right:cx
103     { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
104     {
105         \__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n {#2}
106     }
107     \__tag_seq_gput_right:cn
108     { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
109     {
110         \prop_item:Nn \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#2}
111     }
112 }

113 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn {nx}

(End definition for \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn.)
```

This commands adds a structure as kid. We only need to record the object reference in the sequence.

```
115 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn #1 #2 %#1 num of parent struct, #2
```

```

116   {
117     \_tag_seq_gput_right:cx
118     { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
119     {
120       \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/struct/#2 }
121     }
122   }
123
124 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn {xx}

```

(End definition for `\_tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn`.)

`\_tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nn`  
`\_tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:xx`

At last the command to add an OBJR object. This has to write an object first. The first argument is the number of the parent structure, the second the (expanded) object reference of the annotation.

```

125 \cs_new_protected:Npn\_tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nn #1 #2 %#1 num of parent struct,
126                                         %#2 obj reference
127   {
128     \pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn
129     { dict }
130     {
131       /Type/OBJR/Obj~#2
132     }
133     \_tag_seq_gput_right:cx
134     { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
135     {
136       \pdf_object_ref_last:
137     }
138   }
139
140 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\_tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nn { xx }
141

```

(End definition for `\_tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nn`.)

`\_tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N`  
`\_tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:c`

In luamode it can happen that a single kid in a structure is split at a page break into two or more mcid. In this case the lua code has to convert put the dictionary of the kid into an array. See issue 13 at tagpdf repo. We exchange the dummy command for the kids to mark this case.

```

142 \cs_new_protected:Npn\_tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N #1 %#1 = seq var
143   {
144     \seq_gpop_left:NN #1 \l__tag_tmpa_tl
145     \regex_replace_once:nnN
146     { \c{\_tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n} }
147     { \c{\_tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n} }
148     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
149     \seq_gput_left:NV #1 \l__tag_tmpa_tl
150   }
151
152 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\_tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N { c }

```

(End definition for `\_tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N`.)

\\_\\_tag\\_struct\\_fill\\_kid\\_key:n This command adds the kid info to the K entry. In lua mode the content contains commands which are expanded later. The argument is the structure number.

```

153 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n #1 %#1 is the struct num
154 {
155     \bool_if:NF\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
156     {
157         \seq_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
158         \seq_map_inline:cn { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
159             { \seq_put_right:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_seq { ##1 } }
160         \%seq_show:c { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
161         \%seq_show:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
162         \seq_remove_all:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq {}
163         \%seq_show:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
164         \seq_gset_eq:cN { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq } \l__tag_tmpa_seq
165     }
166
167     \int_case:nnF
168     {
169         \seq_count:c
170             {
171                 g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
172             }
173     }
174     {
175         { 0 }
176         { } %no kids, do nothing
177         { 1 } % 1 kid, insert
178         {
179             % in this case we need a special command in
180             % luamode to get the array right. See issue #13
181             \bool_if:NT\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
182             {
183                 \_\_tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:c
184                     {g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq}
185             }
186             \_\_tag_prop_gput:cnx { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {K}
187             {
188                 \seq_item:cn
189                     {
190                         g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
191                     }
192                     {1}
193             }
194         } %
195     }
196     { %many kids, use an array
197         \_\_tag_prop_gput:cnx { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {K}
198         {
199             [
200                 \seq_use:cn
201                     {
202                         g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
203                     }
204             {

```

```

205           \c_space_tl
206       }
207   ]
208 }
209 }
210 }
211

(End definition for \_\_tag\_struct\_fill\_kid\_key:n)

```

\\_\\_tag\\_struct\\_get\\_dict\\_content:nN This maps the dictionary content of a structure into a tl-var. Basically it does what \pdfdict\\_use:n does. TODO!! this looks over-complicated. Check if it can be done with pdfdict now.

```

212 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN #1 #2 %#1: stucture num
213 {
214     \tl_clear:N #2
215     \seq_map_inline:cn
216     {
217         c__tag_struct_
218         \int_compare:nNnTF{#1}={0}{StructTreeRoot}{StructElem}
219         _entries_seq
220     }
221     {
222         \tl_put_right:Nx
223             #2
224             {
225                 \prop_if_in:cNT
226                 { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
227                 { ##1 }
228                 {
229                     \c_space_tl/##1~\prop_item:cN{ g__tag_struct_#1_prop } { ##1 }
230                 }
231             }
232         }
233     }

```

(End definition for \\_\\_tag\\_struct\\_get\\_dict\\_content:nN.)

\\_\\_tag\\_struct\\_write\\_obj:n This writes out the structure object. This is done in the finish code, in the tree module and guarded by the tree boolean.

```

234 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_struct_write_obj:n #1 % #1 is the struct num
235 {
236     \pdf_object_if_exist:nTF { __tag/struct/#1 }
237     {
238         \_\_tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n { #1 }
239         \_\_tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN { #1 } \l_\_tag_tmpa_tl
240         \exp_args:Nx
241             \pdf_object_write:nx
242                 { __tag/struct/#1 }
243                 {
244                     \l_\_tag_tmpa_tl
245                 }
246     }
247

```

```

248           \msg_error:nnn { tag } { struct-no-objnum } { #1}
249       }
250   }

(End definition for \_\_tag\_struct\_write\_obj:n.)
```

\\_\\_tag\\_struct\\_insert\\_annot:nn This is the command to insert an annotation into the structure. It can probably be used for xform too.

Annotations used as structure content must

1. add a StructParent integer to their dictionary
2. push the object reference as OBJR object in the structure
3. Add a Structparent/obj-nr reference to the parent tree.

For a link this looks like this

```

        \tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
        \tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
(1)    \pdfannot_dict_put:nnx
        { link/URI }
        { StructParent }
        { \int_use:N\c@g_@@_parenttree_obj_int }
        <start link> link text <stop link>
(2+3)   \@@_struct_insert_annot:nn {obj ref}{parent num}
        \tag_mc_end:
        \tag_struct_end:

251 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag_struct_insert_annot:nn #1 #2 %#1 object reference to the annotation
252                                         %#2 structparent number
253 {
254     \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_struct_bool
255     {
256         %get the number of the parent structure:
257         \seq_get:NNF
258             \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
259             \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
260             {
261                 \msg_error:nn { tag } { struct-faulty-nesting }
262             }
263         %put the obj number of the annot in the kid entry, this also creates
264         %the OBJR object
265         \_\_tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:xx
266         {
267             \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
268         }
269         {
270             #1 %
271         }
272         % add the parent obj number to the parent tree:
273         \exp_args:Nnx
274         \_\_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn
275         {
276             #2
```

```

277     }
278     {
279         \pdf_object_ref:e { __tag/struct/\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tma_t1 }
280     }
281     % increase the int:
282     \stepcounter{g__tag_parenttree_obj_int}
283 }
284
(End definition for \__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn.)

```

\\_\_tag\_get\_data\_struct\_tag: this command allows \tag\_get:n to get the current structure tag with the keyword **struct\_tag**. We will need to handle nesting

```

285 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_tag:
286 {
287     \exp_args:N
288     \tl_tail:n
289     {
290         \prop_item:cn {g__tag_struct_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop}{S}
291     }
292 }

```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_get\_data\_struct\_tag:.)

## 5 Keys

This are the keys for the user commands. we store the tag in a variable. But we should be careful, it is only reliable at the begin.

```

label
stash \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
tag   {
title  .tl_set:N      = \l__tag_struct_key_label_tl,
title-o .bool_set:N   = \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool,
alttext .code:n        = % S property
actualtext
lang
ref
E
actualtext
\seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tma_seq { / } {#1/\prop_item:Nn\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop{%
\tl_gset:Nx \g__tag_struct_tag_tl { \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tma_seq {1} }
\tl_gset:Nx \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_t1 { \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tma_seq {2} }
\__tag_check_structure_tag:N \g__tag_struct_tag_t1
\__tag_prop_gput:cnx
{ g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
{ S }
{ \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{ \g__tag_struct_tag_t1} } %
\prop_get:NVNT \g__tag_role_NS_prop\g__tag_struct_tag_NS_t1\l__tag_tma_t1
{
\__tag_prop_gput:cnx
{ g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
{ NS }
{ \l__tag_tma_t1 } %
}
},
title .code:n        = % T property

```

```

316   {
317     \str_set_convert:Nnon
318       \l__tag_tmpa_str
319       { #1 }
320       { default }
321       { utf16/hex }
322     \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
323       { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
324       { T }
325       { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
326   },
327   title-o .code:n      = % T property
328   {
329     \str_set_convert:Nnon
330       \l__tag_tmpa_str
331       { #1 }
332       { default }
333       { utf16/hex }
334     \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
335       { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
336       { T }
337       { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
338   },
339   alttext .code:n      = % Alt property
340   {
341     \str_set_convert:Noon
342       \l__tag_tmpa_str
343       { #1 }
344       { default }
345       { utf16/hex }
346     \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
347       { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
348       { Alt }
349       { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
350   },
351   actualtext .code:n  = % ActualText property
352   {
353     \str_set_convert:Noon
354       \l__tag_tmpa_str
355       { #1 }
356       { default }
357       { utf16/hex }
358     \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
359       { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
360       { ActualText }
361       { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
362   },
363   lang .code:n        = % Lang property
364   {
365     \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
366       { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
367       { Lang }
368       { (#1) }
369   },

```

```

370     ref .code:n      = % Lang property
371     {
372         \tl_clear:N\l_tag_tma_tl
373         \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
374         {
375             \tl_put_right:Nx \l_tag_tma_tl
376             {~\ref_value:nn{tagpdfstruct-##1}{tagstructobj} }
377         }
378         \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
379             { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
380             { Ref }
381             { [\l_tag_tma_tl] }
382         },
383     E .code:n      = % E property
384     {
385         \str_set_convert:Nnon
386             \l_tag_tma_str
387             { #1 }
388             { default }
389             { utf16/hex }
390         \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
391             { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
392             { E }
393             { <\l_tag_tma_str> }
394         },
395     }

```

(End definition for `label` and others. These functions are documented on page 73.)

- AF** keys for the AF keys (associated files). They use commands from l3pdffile! The stream variants use txt as extension to get the mimetype. TODO: check if this should be configurable. For math we will perhaps need another extension.
- AFinline**
- AFinline-o**

```

396 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
397   {
398     AF .code:n      = % AF property
399     {
400         \pdf_object_if_exist:nTF {#1}
401         {
402             \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
403                 { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
404                 { AF }
405                 { \pdf_object_ref:n {#1} }
406             }
407             {
408             }
409             }
410         },
411     ,AFinline .code:n =
412     {
413         \group_begin:
414         \pdf_object_if_exist:eF {__tag/fileobj}\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
415         {
416             \pdffile_embed_stream:nxx
417             {#1}

```

```

418     {tag-AFfile\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int.txt}
419     {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
420 }
421 \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
422     {g__tag_struct_\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int _prop }
423     { AF }
424     { \pdf_object_ref:e {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
425 \group_end:
426 }
427 ,AFinline-o .code:n =
428 {
429     \group_begin:
430     \pdf_object_if_exist:eF {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
431     {
432         \pdffile_embed_stream:oxx
433         {\#1}
434         {tag-AFfile\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int.txt}
435         {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
436     }
437     \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
438     {g__tag_struct_\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int _prop }
439     { AF }
440     { \pdf_object_ref:e {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
441     \group_end:
442 }
443 }

```

(End definition for `AF`, `AFinline`, and `AFinline-o`. These functions are documented on page 73.)

## 6 User commands

```

\tag_struct_begin:n
\tag_struct_end: 444 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_begin:n #1 %#1 key-val
445   {
446     \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
447   {
448     \group_begin:
449     \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
450     \__tag_prop_new:c {g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
451     \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n {\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
452     \__tag_seq_new:c {g__tag_struct_kids_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_seq}
453     \exp_args:Ne
454       \pdf_object_new:nn
455         { __tag/struct/\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
456         { dict }
457     \__tag_prop_gput:cno
458       {g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
459       { Type }
460       { /StructElem }
461     \keys_set:nn { __tag / struct} { #1 }
462     \__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n { \int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
463     \tl_if_empty:NF
464       \l__tag_struct_key_label_tl

```

```

465    {
466        \__tag_ref_label:en{tagpdfstruct-\l__tag_struct_key_label_t1}{struct}
467    }
468 %get the potential parent from the stack:
469 \seq_get:NNF
470     \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
471     \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_t1
472     {
473         \msg_error:nn { tag } { struct-faulty-nesting }
474     }
475 \seq_gpush:NV \g__tag_struct_stack_seq           \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
476 \seq_gpush:NV \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq     \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
477 \tl_gset:NV   \g__tag_struct_stack_current_t1 \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
478 \%seq_show:N  \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
479 \bool_if:NF
480     \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
481 {\%set the parent
482     \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
483         { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
484         { P }
485         {
486             \pdf_object_ref:e { __tag/struct/\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_t1 }
487         }
488 \%record this structure as kid:
489 \%tl_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_current_t1
490 \%tl_show:N \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_t1
491     \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:xx
492         { \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_t1 }
493         { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_t1 }
494 \%prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_t1 _prop }
495 \%seq_show:c {g__tag_struct_kids_\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_t1 _seq}
496     }
497 \%prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_t1 _prop }
498 \%seq_show:c {g__tag_struct_kids_\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_t1 _seq}
499 \group_end:
500 }
501 }
502
503
504 \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_struct_end:
505 { %take the current structure num from the stack:
506     %the objects are written later, lua mode hasn't all needed info yet
507 \%seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
508 \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
509     {
510         \seq_gpop:NN   \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_t1
511         \seq_gpop:NNTF \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_t1
512         {
513             \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:o { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_t1 }
514         }
515         { \__tag_check_no_open_struct: }
516     % get the previous one, shouldn't be empty as the root should be there
517     \seq_get:NNTF \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_t1
518     {

```

```

519          \tl_gset:NV  \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl \l__tag_tmpa_tl
520      }
521      {
522          \__tag_check_no_open_struct:
523      }
524      \seq_get:NNT \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
525      {
526          \tl_gset:NV \g__tag_struct_tag_tl \l__tag_tmpa_tl
527      }
528  }
529 }
```

(End definition for `\tag_struct_begin:n` and `\tag_struct_end:`. These functions are documented on page 72.)

**\tag\_struct\_use:n** This command allows to use a stashed structure in another place. TODO: decide how it should be guarded. Probably by the struct-check.

```

530 \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_struct_use:n %#1 is the label
531 {
532     \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
533     {
534         \prop_if_exist:cTF
535             { g__tag_struct_ \__tag_ref_value:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{unknown}_prop } %
536             {
537                 \__tag_check_struct_used:n {#1}
538                 %add the label structure as kid to the current structure (can be the root)
539                 \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:xx
540                     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
541                     { \__tag_ref_value:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{0} }
542                 %add the current structure to the labeled one as parents
543                 \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
544                     { g__tag_struct_ \__tag_ref_value:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{0}_prop }
545                     { P }
546                     {
547                         \pdf_object_ref:e { __tag/struct/\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
548                     }
549     }
550     {
551         \msg_warning:nnn{ tag }{struct-label-unknown}{#1}
552     }
553 }
554 }
```

(End definition for `\tag_struct_use:n`. This function is documented on page 72.)

**\tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn**

**\tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:xx**

**\tag\_struct\_parent\_int:**

This are the user command to insert annotations. They must be used together to get the numbers right. They use a counter to the StructParent and `\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` increases the counter given back by `\tag_struct_parent_int:`.

It must be used together with `\tag_struct_parent_int:` to insert an annotation. TODO: decide how it should be guarded if tagging is deactivated.

```

555 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_insert_annot:nn #1 #2 %#1 should be an object reference
556                                         %#2 struct parent num
557 {
558     \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
```

```

559      {
560          \_\_tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn {\#1}{\#2}
561      }
562  }
563
564 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tag_struct_insert annot:nn {xx}
565 \cs_new:Npn \tag_struct_parent_int: {\int_use:c {c@g\_\_tag\_parenttree\_obj\_int}}
566
567 </package>
568

```

(End definition for \tag\_struct\_insert annot:nn and \tag\_struct\_parent\_int:. These functions are documented on page 72.)

## 7 Attributes and attribute classes

```

569 <*header>
570 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-attr-code} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
571     {part of tagpdf - code related to attributes and attribute classes}
572 </header>

```

### 7.1 Variables

\g\\_tag\\_attr\\_entries\\_prop will store attribute names and their dictionary content.  
\g\\_tag\\_attr\\_class\\_used\\_seq will hold the attributes which have been used as class name. \l\\_@attr\\_value\\_tl is used to build the attribute array or key. Everytime an attribute is used for the first time, and object is created with its content, the name-object reference relation is stored in \g\\_@attr\\_objref\\_prop

```

573 <*package>
574 \prop_new:N \g\_tag\_attr\_entries\_prop
575 \seq_new:N \g\_tag\_attr\_class\_used\_seq
576 \tl_new:N \l\_tag\_attr\_value\_tl
577 \prop_new:N \g\_tag\_attr\_objref\_prop %will contain obj num of used attributes

```

(End definition for \g\\_tag\\_attr\\_entries\\_prop and others.)

### 7.2 Commands and keys

This allows to define attributes. Defined attributes are stored in a global property. newattribute expects two brace group, the name and the content. The content typically needs an /0 key for the owner. An example look like this.

```

\tagpdfsetup
{
    newattribute =
        {TH-col}{/0 /Table /Scope /Column},
    newattribute =
        {TH-row}{/0 /Table /Scope /Row},
}

578 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag\_attr\_new\_entry:nn #1 #2 %#1:name, #2: content
579 {
580     \prop_gput:Nnn \g\_tag\_attr\_entries\_prop
581         {\#1}{\#2}

```

```

582     }
583
584 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
585 {
586     newattribute .code:n =
587     {
588         __tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1
589     }
590 }

```

(End definition for `\__tag_attr_new_entry:nn` and `newattribute`. This function is documented on page 74.)

**attribute-class** attribute-class has to store the used attribute names so that they can be added to the ClassMap later.

```

591 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
592 {
593     attribute-class .code:n =
594     {
595         \clist_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_clist { #1 }
596         \seq_set_from_clist:NN \l__tag_tmpa_seq \l__tag_tmpa_clist
597         \seq_map_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
598         {
599             \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
600             {
601                 \msg_error:nnn { tag } { attr-unknown } { ##1 }
602             }
603             \seq_gput_left:Nn \g__tag_attr_class_used_seq { ##1 }
604         }
605         \seq_set_map:NNn \l__tag_tmpb_seq \l__tag_tmpa_seq
606         {
607             /##1
608         }
609         \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl
610         {
611             \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
612             \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_seq { \c_space_tl }
613             \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
614         }
615         \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 0 }
616         {
617             \__tag_prop_gput:cny
618             { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
619             { C }
620             { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
621             \%prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
622         }
623     }
624 }

```

(End definition for `attribute-class`. This function is documented on page 74.)

**attribute**

```

625 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
626 {

```

```

627   attribute .code:n = % A property (attribute, value currently a dictionary)
628   {
629     \clist_set:Nn          \l__tag_tmpa_clist { #1 }
630     \seq_set_from_clist:NN \l__tag_tmpa_seq \l__tag_tmpa_clist
631     \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_attr_value_tl
632     {
633       \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
634     }
635     \seq_map_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
636     {
637       \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
638       {
639         \msg_error:nnn { tag } { attr-unknown } { ##1 }
640       }
641       \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1}
642       {%\prop_show:N \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
643         \pdf_object_unnamed_write:nx
644         { dict }
645         {
646           \prop_item:Nn\g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
647         }
648         \prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1} {\pdf_object_ref_last:}
649       }
650       \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_attr_value_tl
651       {
652         \c_space_tl
653         \prop_item:Nn \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1}
654       }
655     % \tl_show:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl
656     }
657     \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_attr_value_tl
658     {%
659       \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
660     }
661   % \tl_show:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl
662   \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
663   { \g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
664   { A }
665   { \l__tag_attr_value_tl }
666 },
667 }
668 </package>

```

(End definition for `attribute`. This function is documented on page 74.)

# Part VIII

## The **tagpdf-luatex.def**

### Driver for luatex

### Part of the tagpdf package

```

1 <@@=tag>
2 {*luatex}
3 \ProvidesExplFile {tagpdf-luatex.def} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 {tagpdf~driver~for~luatex}

```

## 1 Loading the lua

The space code requires that the fall back font has been loaded and initialized, so we force that first. But perhaps this could be done in the kernel.

```

5 {
6   \fontencoding{TU}\fontfamily{lmr}\fontseries{m}\fontshape{n}\fontsize{10pt}{10pt}\selectfont
7 }
8 \lua_now:e { tagpdf=require('tagpdf.lua') }

```

The following defines wrappers around prop and seq commands to store the data also in lua tables. I probably want also lua tables I put them in the ltx.@@.tables namespaces. The tables will be named like the variables but without backslash. To access such a table with a dynamical name create a string and then use ltx.@@.tables[string]. Old code, I'm not quite sure if this was a good idea. Now I have mix of table in ltx.@@.tables and ltx.@@.mc/struct. And a lot is probably not needed. TODO: this should be cleaned up, but at least roles are currently using the table!

```

\__tag_prop_new:N
\__tag_seq_new:N
\__tag_prop_gput:Nnn
\__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn
\__tag_seq_item:cn
\__tag_prop_item:cn
\__tag_seq_show:N
\__tag_prop_show:N
\__tag_prop_new:N
\__tag_seq_new:N #1
{
  \prop_new:N #1
  \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 = {} }
}
\__tag_seq_show:N
\__tag_prop_show:N
\__tag_seq_new:N #1
{
  \seq_new:N #1
  \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 = {} }
}
\__tag_prop_gput:Nnn #1 #2 #3
{
  \prop_gput:Nnn #1 { #2 } { #3 }
  \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 ["#2"] = "#3" }
}

```

```

30 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn #1 #2
31 {
32     \seq_gput_right:Nn #1 { #2 }
33     \lua_now:e { table.insert(ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1, "#2") }
34 }
35
36 %Hm not quite sure about the naming
37
38 \cs_set:Npn \__tag_seq_item:cn #1 #2
39 {
40     \lua_now:e { tex.print(ltx.__tag.tables.#1[#2]) }
41 }
42
43 \cs_set:Npn \__tag_prop_item:cn #1 #2
44 {
45     \lua_now:e { tex.print(ltx.__tag.tables.#1["#2"]) }
46 }
47
48 %for debugging commands that show both the seq/prop and the lua tables
49 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_show:N #1
50 {
51     \seq_show:N #1
52     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.log ("lua-sequence~array~\cs_to_str:N#1",1) }
53     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq (ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1) }
54 }
55
56 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_show:N #1
57 {
58     \prop_show:N #1
59     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.log ("lua-property~table~\cs_to_str:N#1",1) }
60     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop (ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1) }
61 }

```

(End definition for `\__tag_prop_new:N` and others.)

62 `</luatex>`

The module declaration

```

63 (*lua)
64 -- tagpdf.lua
65 -- Ulrike Fischer
66
67 local ProvidesLuaModule = {
68     name      = "tagpdf",
69     version   = "0.92",      --TAGVERSION
70     date      = "2021-08-27", --TAGDATE
71     description = "tagpdf lua code",
72     license    = "The LATEX Project Public License 1.3c"
73 }
74
75 if luatexbase and luatexbase.provides_module then
76     luatexbase.provides_module (ProvidesLuaModule)
77 end
78
79 --[[[

```

```

80 The code has quite probably a number of problems
81 - more variables should be local instead of global
82 - the naming is not always consistent due to the development of the code
83 - the traversing of the shipout box must be tested with more complicated setups
84 - it should probably handle more node types
85 -
86 --]]
87

```

Some comments about the lua structure.

```

88 --[[[
89 the main table is named ltx._tag. It contains the functions and also the data
90 collected during the compilation.
91
92 ltx._tag.mc      will contain mc connected data.
93 ltx._tag.struct will contain structure related data.
94 ltx._tag.page    will contain page data
95 ltx._tag.tables contains also data from mc and struct (from older code). This needs cleaning
96           There are certainly dublettes, but I don't dare yet ...
97 ltx._tag.func    will contain (public) functions.
98 ltx._tag.trace   will contain tracing/logging functions.
99 local funktions starts with --
100 functions meant for users will be in ltx.tag
101
102 functions
103 ltx._tag.func.get_num_from (tag):      takes a tag (string) and returns the id number
104 ltx._tag.func.output_num_from (tag):  takes a tag (string) and prints (to tex) the id number
105 ltx._tag.func.get_tag_from (num):     takes a num and returns the tag
106 ltx._tag.func.output_tag_from (num):  takes a num and prints (to tex) the tag
107 ltx._tag.func.store_mc_data (num,key,data): stores key=data in ltx._tag.mc[num]
108 ltx._tag.func.store_mc_label (label,num): stores label=num in ltx._tag.mc.labels
109 ltx._tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcnum,kid,page): stores the mc-kids of mcnum on page page
110 ltx._tag.func.store_mc_in_page(mcnum,mcpagencnt,page): stores in the page table the number of
111 ltx._tag.func.store_struct_mcabs (structnum,mcnum): stores relations structnum<->mcnum (absolute)
112 ltx._tag.func.mc_insert_kids (mcnum): inserts the /K entries for mcnum by wandering through
113 ltx._tag.func.mark_page_elements(box,mcpagencnt,mccntprev,mlopen,name,mctypeprev) : the main
114 ltx._tag.func.mark_shipout (): a wrapper around the core function which inserts the last EMC
115 ltx._tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (page): outputs the entries of the parenttree for this page
116 ltx._tag.func.output_parenttree(): outputs the content of the parenttree
117 ltx._tag.func.pdf_object_ref(name): outputs the object reference for the object name
118 ltx._tag.func.markspaceon(), ltx._tag.func.markspaceoff(): (de)activates the marking of pos
119 ltx._tag.trace.show_mc_data (num,loglevel): shows ltx._tag.mc[num] is the current log level
120 ltx._tag.trace.show_all_mc_data (max,loglevel): shows a maximum about mc's if the current log level
121 ltx._tag.trace.show_seq: shows a sequence (array)
122 ltx._tag.trace.show_struct_data (num): shows data of structure num
123 ltx._tag.trace.show_prop: shows a prop
124 ltx._tag.trace.log
125 ltx._tag.trace.showspaces : boolean
126 --]]
127

```

This set-ups the main attribute registers. The mc\_type attribute stores the type (P, Span etc) encoded as a num, The mc\_cnt attribute stores the absolute number and allows so to see if a node belongs to the same mc-chunk.

The interwordspace attr is set by the function `@@_mark_spaces`, and marks the place where spaces should be inserted. The interwordfont attr is set by the function `@@_mark_spaces` too and stores the font, so that we can decide which font to use for the real space char.

```

128 local mctypeattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_mc_type_attr")
129 local mccntattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_mc_cnt_attr")
130 local iwspaceattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordspace_attr")
131 local iwoffontattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordfont_attr")

```

with this token we can query the state of the boolean and so detect if unmarked nodes should be marked as attributes

```

132 local tagunmarkedbool= token.create("g__tag_tagunmarked_bool")
133 local truebool      = token.create("c_true_bool")

```

Now a number of local versions from global tables. Not all is perhaps needed, most node variants were copied from lua-debug.

```

134 local catlatex      = luatexbase.registernumber("catcodetable@latex")
135 local tableinsert    = table.insert
136 local nodeid         = node.id
137 local nodecopy        = node.copy
138 local nodegetattribute = node.get_attribute
139 local nodesetattribute = node.set_attribute
140 local nodehasattribute = node.has_attribute
141 local nodenew        = node.new
142 local nodetail       = node.tail
143 local nodeslide      = node.slide
144 local noderemove     = node.remove
145 local nodetraverseid = node.traverse_id
146 local nodetraverse   = node.traverse
147 local nodeinsertafter = node.insert_after
148 local nodeinsertbefore = node.insert_before
149 local pdfpageref     = pdf.pageref
150
151 local HLIST          = node.id("hlist")
152 local VLIST          = node.id("vlist")
153 local RULE           = node.id("rule")
154 local DISC           = node.id("disc")
155 local GLUE           = node.id("glue")
156 local GLYPH          = node.id("glyph")
157 local KERN           = node.id("kern")
158 local PENALTY         = node.id("penalty")
159 local LOCAL_PAR      = node.id("local_par")
160 local MATH           = node.id("math")

```

Now we setup the main table structure. ltx is used by other latex code too!

```

161 ltx           = ltx      or { }
162 ltx._tag      = ltx._tag  or { }
163 ltx._tag.mc   = ltx._tag.mc or { } -- mc data
164 ltx._tag.struct = ltx._tag.struct or { } -- struct data
165 ltx._tag.tables = ltx._tag.tables or { } -- tables created with new prop and new seq.
166                                     -- wasn't a so great idea ...
167                                     -- g__tag_role_tags_seq used by tag<-> is in this tabl
168 ltx._tag.page  = ltx._tag.page or { } -- page data, currently only i->{0->mignum,1->mcr
169 ltx._tag.trace = ltx._tag.trace or { } -- show commands
170 ltx._tag.func  = ltx._tag.func or { } -- functions

```

```
171 ltx.__tag.conf      = ltx.__tag.conf  or  {} -- configuration variables
```

## 2 Logging functions

`--tag_log`  
`ltx.__tag.trace.log`

This rather simple log function takes as argument a message (string) and a number and will output the message to the log/terminal if the current loglevel is greater or equal than num.

```
172 local __tag_log =
173   function (message,loglevel)
174     if (loglevel or 3) <= tex.count["l__tag_loglevel_int"] then
175       texio.write_nl("tagpdf: "... message)
176     end
177   end
178
179 ltx.__tag.trace.log = __tag_log
```

(End definition for `--tag_log` and `ltx.__tag.trace.log`.)

`ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq`

This shows the content of a seq as stored in the tables table. It is used by the `\@@_seq_show:N` function. It is not used in user commands, only for debugging, and so requires log level  $>0$ .

```
180 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq (seq)
181   if (type(seq) == "table") then
182     for i,v in ipairs(seq) do
183       __tag_log ("[" .. i .. "] => " .. tostring(v),1)
184     end
185   else
186     __tag_log ("sequence " .. tostring(seq) .. " not found",1)
187   end
188 end
```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq`.)

`--tag_pairs_prop`  
`ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop`

This shows the content of a prop as stored in the tables table. It is used by the `\@@_prop_show:N` function.

```
189 local __tag_pairs_prop =
190   function (prop)
191     local a = {}
192     for n in pairs(prop) do tableinsert(a, n) end
193     table.sort(a)
194     local i = 0           -- iterator variable
195     local iter = function () -- iterator function
196       i = i + 1
197       if a[i] == nil then return nil
198       else return a[i], prop[a[i]]
199     end
200   end
201   return iter
202 end
203
204
205 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop (prop)
206   if (type(prop) == "table") then
```

```

207   for i,v in __tag_pairs_prop (prop) do
208     __tag_log ("[" .. i .. "] => " .. tostring(v),1)
209   end
210 else
211   __tag_log ("prop " .. tostring(prop) .. " not found or not a table",1)
212 end
213 end

(End definition for __tag_pairs_prop and ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop.)

```

ltx.\_\_tag.trace.show\_mc\_data This shows some data for a mc given by num. If something is shown depends on the log level. The function is used by the following function and then in \ShowTagging

```

214 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (num,loglevel)
215 if ltx.__tag and ltx.__tag.mc and ltx.__tag.mc[num] then
216   for k,v in pairs(ltx.__tag.mc[num]) do
217     __tag_log ("mc"..num.." :" ..tostring(k)..>"..tostring(v),loglevel)
218   end
219   if ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"] then
220     __tag_log ("mc" .. num .. " has " .. #ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"] .. " kids",loglevel)
221     for k,v in ipairs(ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"]) do
222       __tag_log ("mc ".. num .. " kid "..k.." =>" .. v.kid.." on page " ..v.page,loglevel)
223     end
224   end
225 else
226   __tag_log ("mc"..num.." not found",loglevel)
227 end
228 end

(End definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data.)

```

ltx.\_\_tag.trace.show\_all\_mc\_data This shows data for the mc's between min and max (numbers). It is used by the \ShowTagging function.

```

229 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data (min,max,loglevel)
230 for i = min, max do
231   ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (i,loglevel)
232 end
233 texio.write_nl("")
234 end

(End definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data.)

```

ltx.\_\_tag.trace.show\_struct\_data This function shows some struct data. Unused but kept for debugging.

```

235 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data (num)
236 if ltx.__tag and ltx.__tag.struct and ltx.__tag.struct[num] then
237   for k,v in ipairs(ltx.__tag.struct[num]) do
238     __tag_log ("struct "..num.." :" ..tostring(k)..>"..tostring(v),1)
239   end
240 else
241   __tag_log ("struct "..num.." not found ",1)
242 end
243 end

(End definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data.)

```

## 3 Helper functions

### 3.1 Retrieve data functions

This takes a node as argument and returns the mc-cnt, the mc-type and and the tag (calculated from the mc-cnt).

```
244 local __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag = function (n)
245   local mccnt      = nodegetattribute(n,mccntattributeid) or -1
246   local mctype     = nodegetattribute(n,mctypeattributeid) or -1
247   local tag        = ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from(mctype)
248   return mccnt,mctype,tag
249 end
```

(End definition for `__tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag`.)

`__tag_get_mathsubtype` This function allows to detect if we are at the begin or the end of math. It takes as argument a mathnode.

```
250 local function __tag_get_mathsubtype (mathnode)
251   if mathnode.subtype == 0 then
252     subtype = "beginmath"
253   else
254     subtype = "endmath"
255   end
256   return subtype
257 end
```

(End definition for `__tag_get_mathsubtype`.)

These functions take as argument a string `tag`, and return the number under which is it recorded (and so the attribute value). The first function outputs the number for lua, while the `output` function outputs to tex.

```
258 local __tag_get_num_from =
259   function (tag)
260     if ltx.__tag.tables["g__tag_role_tags_prop"][tag] then
261       a= ltx.__tag.tables["g__tag_role_tags_prop"][tag]
262     else
263       a= -1
264     end
265     return a
266   end
267
268 ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from = __tag_get_num_from
269
270 function ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from (tag)
271   local num = __tag_get_num_from (tag)
272   tex.sprint(catlatex,num)
273   if num == -1 then
274     __tag_log ("Unknown tag ..tag.." used")
275   end
276 end
```

(End definition for `__tag_get_num_from`, `ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from`, and `ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from`.)

```
--tag_get_tag_from  
ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from  
ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from
```

These functions are the opposites to the previous function: they take as argument a number (the attribute value) and return the string `tag`. The first function outputs the number for lua, while the `output` function outputs to tex.

```
277 local __tag_get_tag_from =  
278   function (num)  
279     if ltx.__tag.tables["g__tag_role_tags_seq"][num] then  
280       a = ltx.__tag.tables["g__tag_role_tags_seq"][num]  
281     else  
282       a= "UNKNOWN"  
283     end  
284   return a  
285 end  
286  
287 ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from = __tag_get_tag_from  
288  
289 function ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from (num)  
290   tex.sprint(catlatex,__tag_get_tag_from (num))  
291 end
```

(End definition for `--tag_get_tag_from`, `ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from`, and `ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from`.)

`ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data`

This function stores for `key=data` for mc-chunk `num`. It is used in the tagpdf-mc code, to store for example the tag string, and the raw options.

```
292 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data (num,key,data)  
293   ltx.__tag.mc[num] = ltx.__tag.mc[num] or {}  
294   ltx.__tag.mc[num][key] = data  
295   __tag_log ("INFO TEX-STORE-MC-DATA: "..num.." => "..tostring(key).. " => "..tostring(data),3)  
296 end
```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data`.)

`ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label`

This function stores the `label=num` relationship in the `labels` subtable. TODO: this is probably unused and can go.

```
297 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label (label,num)  
298   ltx.__tag.mc["labels"] = ltx.__tag.mc["labels"] or {}  
299   ltx.__tag.mc.labels[label] = num  
300 end
```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label`.)

`ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid`

This function is used in the traversing code. It stores a sub-chunk of a mc `mcnum` into the `kids` table.

```
301 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcnum,kid,page)  
302   ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-STORE-MC-KID: "..mcnum.." => "..kid.." on page "..page,3)  
303   ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] or {}  
304   local kidtable = {kid=kid,page=page}  
305   tableinsert(ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"], kidtable )  
306 end
```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid`.)

`ltx._tag.func.mc_num_of_kids`

This function returns the number of kids a mc `mcnum` has. We need to account for the case that a mc can have no kids.

```

307 function ltx._tag.func.mc_num_of_kids (mcnum)
308   local num = 0
309   if ltx._tag.mc[mcnum] and ltx._tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] then
310     num = #ltx._tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"]
311   end
312   ltx._tag.trace.log ("INFO MC-KID-NUMBERS: " .. mcnum .. "has " .. num .. "KIDS",4)
313   return num
314 end

```

(End definition for `ltx._tag.func.mc_num_of_kids`.)

### 3.2 Functions to insert the pdf literals

`--tag_insert_emc_node`

This insert the emc node.

```

315 local function __tag_insert_emc_node (head,current)
316   local emcnod = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
317   emcnod.data = "EMC"
318   emcnod.mode=1
319   head = node.insert_before(head,current,emcnod)
320   return head
321 end

```

(End definition for `--tag_insert_emc_node`.)

`--tag_insert_bmc_node`

This inserts a simple bmc node

```

322 local function __tag_insert_bmc_node (head,current,tag)
323   local bmcnod = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
324   bmcnod.data = "/"..tag.." BMC"
325   bmcnod.mode=1
326   head = node.insert_before(head,current,bmcnod)
327   return head
328 end

```

(End definition for `--tag_insert_bmc_node`.)

`--tag_insert_bdc_node`

This inserts a bcd node with a fix dict. TODO: check if this is still used, now that we create properties.

```

329 local function __tag_insert_bdc_node (head,current,tag,dict)
330   local bdcnod = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
331   bdcnod.data = "/"..tag.."<<"..dict..">> BDC"
332   bdcnod.mode=1
333   head = node.insert_before(head,current,bdcnod)
334   return head
335 end

```

(End definition for `--tag_insert_bdc_node`.)

`ltx._tag.pdf_object_ref`

This allows to reference a pdf object reserved with the l3pdf command by name. The return value is `n 0 R`, if the object doesn't exist, `n` is 0. TODO: it uses internal l3pdf commands, this should be properly supported by l3pdf

```

336 local function __tag_pdf_object_ref (name)
337   local tokenname = 'c__pdf_backend_object_'.name..'_int'

```

```

338     local object = token.create(tokenname).index..' 0 R'
339     return object
340 end
341 ltx._tag.func.pdf_object_ref=_tag_pdf_object_ref
(End definition for _tag_pdf_object_ref and ltx._tag.func.pdf_object_ref.)

```

## 4 Function for the real space chars

`_tag_show_spacemark` A debugging function, it is used to inserts red color markers in the places where space chars can go, it can have side effects so not always reliable, but ok.

```

342 local function _tag_show_spacemark (head,current,color,height)
343   local markcolor = color or "1 0 0"
344   local markheight = height or 10
345   local pdfstring = node.new("whatsit","pdf_literal")
346   pdfstring.data =
347     string.format("q ..markcolor.." RG "..markcolor.." rg 0.4 w 0 %g m 0 %g l S Q",-
3,markheight)
348   head = node.insert_after(head,current,pdfstring)
349   return head
350 end

```

(End definition for \_tag\_show\_spacemark.)

`_tag_fakespace` This is used to define a lua version of \pdffakespace  
`ltx._tag.func.fakespace`

```

351 local function _tag_fakespace()
352   tex.setattribute(iwspaceattributeid,1)
353   tex.setattribute(iwfontattributeid,font.current())
354 end
355 ltx._tag.func.fakespace = _tag_fakespace

```

(End definition for \_tag\_fakespace and ltx.\_tag.func.fakespace.)

`_tag_mark_spaces` a function to mark up places where real space chars should be inserted. It only sets attributes, these are then be used in a later traversing which inserts the actual spaces. When space handling is activated this function is inserted in some callbacks.

```

356 --[[ a function to mark up places where real space chars should be inserted
357       it only sets an attribute.
358 --]]
359
360 local function _tag_mark_spaces (head)
361   local inside_math = false
362   for n in nodetraverse(head) do
363     local id = n.id
364     if id == GLYPH then
365       local glyph = n
366       if glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == GLUE)
367         and not inside_math and (glyph.next.width >0)
368       then
369         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
370         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
371         -- for debugging
372         if ltx._tag.trace.showspaces then

```

```

373         __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
374     end
375 elseif glyph.next and (glyph.next.id==KERN) and not inside_math then
376     local kern = glyph.next
377     if kern.next and (kern.next.id== GLUE)  and (kern.next.width >0)
378     then
379         nodesetattribute(kern.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
380         nodesetattribute(kern.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
381     end
382 end
383 -- look also back
384 if glyph.prev and (glyph.prev.id == GLUE)
385     and not inside_math
386     and (glyph.prev.width >0)
387     and not nodehasattribute(glyph.prev,iwspaceattributeid)
388 then
389     nodesetattribute(glyph.prev,iwspaceattributeid,1)
390     nodesetattribute(glyph.prev,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
391 -- for debugging
392     if ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces then
393         __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
394     end
395 end
396 elseif id == PENALTY then
397     local glyph = n
398     -- ltx.__tag.trace.log ("PENALTY "... n.subtype.."VALUE"..n.penalty,3)
399     if glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == GLUE)
400         and not inside_math and (glyph.next.width >0) and n.subtype==0
401     then
402         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
403         -- nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
404         -- for debugging
405         if ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces then
406             __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
407         end
408     end
409 elseif id == MATH then
410     inside_math = (n.subtype == 0)
411 end
412 end
413 return head
414 end

```

(End definition for `__tag_mark_spaces`.)

`__tag_activate_mark_space`  
`ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon`  
`ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff`

Theses functions add/remove the function which marks the spaces to the callbacks `pre_linebreak_filter` and `hpack_filter`

```

415 local function __tag_activate_mark_space ()
416     if not luatexbase.in_callback ("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces") then
417         luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_linebreak_filter",__tag_mark_spaces,"markspaces")
418         luatexbase.add_to_callback("hpack_filter",__tag_mark_spaces,"markspaces")
419     end
420 end
421

```

```

422 ltx._tag.func.markspaceon=_tag_activate_mark_space
423
424 local function _tag_deactivate_mark_space ()
425   if luatexbase.in_callback ("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces") then
426     luatexbase.remove_from_callback("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces")
427     luatexbase.remove_from_callback("hpack_filter","markspaces")
428   end
429 end
430
431 ltx._tag.func.markspaceoff=_tag_deactivate_mark_space

```

(End definition for `_tag_activate_mark_space`, `ltx._tag.func.markspaceon`, and `ltx._tag.func.markspaceoff`.)

`default_space_char` We need two local variable to setup a default space char.

```

432 local default_space_char = node.new(GLYPH)
433 local default_fontid      = font.id("TU/lmr/m/n/10")
434 default_space_char.char  = 32
435 default_space_char.font   = default_fontid

```

(End definition for `default_space_char` and `default_fontid`. These functions are documented on page ??.)

`--tag_space_chars_shipout` `ltx._tag.func.space_chars_shipout` These is the main function to insert real space chars. It inserts a glyph before every glue which has been marked previously. The attributes are copied from the glue, so if the tagging is done later, it will be tagged like it.

```

436 local function _tag_space_chars_shipout (box)
437   local head = box.head
438   if head then
439     for n in node.traverse(head) do
440       local spaceattr = nodegetattribute(n,iwspaceattributeid) or -1
441       if n.id == HLIST then -- enter the hlist
442         _tag_space_chars_shipout (n)
443       elseif n.id == VLIST then -- enter the vlist
444         _tag_space_chars_shipout (n)
445       elseif n.id == GLUE then
446         if ltx._tag.trace.showspaces and spaceattr==1 then
447           _tag_show_spacemark (head,n,"0 1 0")
448         end
449         if spaceattr==1 then
450           local space
451           local space_char = node.copy(default_space_char)
452           local curfont    = nodegetattribute(n,iwfontattributeid)
453           ltx._tag.trace.log ("INFO SPACE-FUNCTION-FONT: ".. tostring(curfont),3)
454           if curfont and luaotfload.aux.slot_of_name(curfont,"space") then
455             space_char.font=curfont
456           end
457           head, space = node.insert_before(head, n, space_char) --
458           n.width      = n.width - space.width
459           space.attr  = n.attr
460         end
461       end
462     end
463   end
464 end

```

```

465
466 function ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout (box)
467   __tag_space_chars_shipout (box)
468 end

```

(End definition for `__tag_space_chars_shipout` and `ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout`.)

## 5 Function for the tagging

`ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids`

This is the main function to insert the K entry into a StructElem object. It is used in tagpdf-mc-luacode module. The `single` attribute allows to handle the case that a single mc on the tex side can have more than one kid after the processing here, and so we get the correct array/non array setup.

```

469 function ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (mcnum,single)
470   if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] then
471     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID-TEST: " .. mcnum,4)
472     if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] ["kids"] then
473       if #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] ["kids"] > 1 and single==1 then
474         tex.sprint("[")
475       end
476       for i,kidstable in ipairs( ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] ["kids"] ) do
477         local kidnum = kidstable["kid"]
478         local kidpage = kidstable["page"]
479         local kidpageobjnum = pdfpageref(kidpage)
480         ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID: " .. mcnum ..
481                           " insert KID " .. i..
482                           " with num " .. kidnum ..
483                           " on page " .. kidpage.."/"..kidpageobjnum,3)
484         tex.sprint(catlatex,"<</Type /MCR /Pg "..kidpageobjnum .. " 0 R /MCID "..kidnum.. " >> ")
485       end
486       if #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] ["kids"] > 1 and single==1 then
487         tex.sprint("]")
488       end
489     else
490       -- this is typically not a problem, e.g. empty hbox in footer/header can
491       -- trigger this warning.
492       ltx.__tag.trace.log("WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-NO-KIDS: "..mcnum.." has no kids",2)
493       if single==1 then
494         tex.sprint("null")
495       end
496     end
497   else
498     ltx.__tag.trace.log("WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-MISSING: "..mcnum.." doesn't exist",0)
499   end
500 end

```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids`.)

`ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs`

This function is used in the tagpdf-mc-luacode. It store the absolute count of the mc into the current structure. This must be done ordered.

```

501 function ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs (structnum,mcnum)
502   ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]=ltx.__tag.struct[structnum] or {}
503   ltx.__tag.struct[structnum] ["mc"]=ltx.__tag.struct[structnum] ["mc"] or {}

```

```

504 -- a structure can contain more than one mc chunk, the content should be ordered
505 tableinsert(ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"],mcnum)
506 ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INTO-STRUCT: ...
507                         mcnum.. inserted in struct "..structnum,3)
508 -- but every mc can only be in one structure
509 ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]= ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] or {}
510 ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"] = structnum
511 end
512

```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs.`)

`ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page`

This is used in the traversing code and stores the relation between abs count and page count.

```

513 -- pay attention: lua counts arrays from 1, tex pages from one
514 -- mcid and arrays in pdf count from 0.
515 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page (mcnum,mcpagecnt,page)
516   ltx.__tag.page[page] = ltx.__tag.page[page] or {}
517   ltx.__tag.page[page][mcpagecnt] = mcnum
518   ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MC-INTO-PAGE: page " .. page ..
519                         ": inserting MCID " .. mcpagecnt .. " => " .. mcnum,3)
520 end

```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page.`)

`ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements`

This is the main traversing function. See the lua comment for more details.

```

521 --[[[
522   Now follows the core function
523   It wades through the shipout box and checks the attributes
524   ARGUMENTS
525   box: is a box,
526   mcpagecnt: num, the current page cnt of mc (should start at -1 in shipout box), needed for
527   mccntprev: num, the attribute cnt of the previous node/whatever - if different we have a
528   mcopen: num, records if some bdc/emc is open
529   These arguments are only needed for log messages, if not present are replaced by fix strings
530   name: string to describe the box
531   mctypeprev: num, the type attribute of the previous node/whatever
532
533   there are lots of logging messages currently. Should be cleaned up in due course.
534   One should also find ways to make the function shorter.
535 --]]
536
537 function ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (box,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,name,mctypeprev)
538   local name = name or ("SOMEBOX")
539   local mctypeprev = mctypeprev or -1
540   local abspage = status.total_pages + 1 -- the real counter is increased
541                                         -- inside the box so one off
542                                         -- if the callback is not used. (???)"
543   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ABSPAGE: " .. abspage,3)
544   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ARGS: pagecnt".. mcpagecnt..
545                         " prev "..mccntprev ..
546                         " type prev "..mctypeprev,4)
547   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-TRAVERSING-BOX: "... tostring(name)..
548                         " TYPE "... node.type(node.getid(box)),3)

```

```

549 local head = box.head -- ShipoutBox is a vlist?
550 if head then
551   mccnthead, mctypehead, taghead = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (head)
552   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-HEAD: " ..
553                           node.type(node.getid(head))..
554                           " MC".. tostring(mccnthead).. 
555                           " => TAG " .. tostring(mctypehead).. 
556                           " => "... tostring(taghead),3)
557 else
558   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NO-HEAD: head is "..
559                           tostring(head),3)
560 end
561 for n in node.traverse(head) do
562   local mccnt, mctype, tag = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (n)
563   local spaceattr = nodegetattribute(n,iwspaceattributeid) or -1
564   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NODE: "..
565                           node.type(node.getid(n))..
566                           " MC".. tostring(mccnt).. 
567                           " => TAG " .. tostring(mctype).. 
568                           " => "... tostring(tag),3)
569 if n.id == HLIST
570 then -- enter the hlist
571   mcopen,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mctypeprev=
572   ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (n,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,"INTERNAL HLIST",mctypep
573 elseif n.id == VLIST then -- enter the vlist
574   mcopen,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mctypeprev=
575   ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (n,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,"INTERNAL VLIST",mctypep
576 elseif n.id == GLUE then      -- at glue real space chars are inserted, but this has
577                                -- been done if the previous shipout wandering, so here it
578 elseif n.id == LOCAL_PAR then -- local_par is ignored
579 elseif n.id == PENALTY then   -- penalty is ignored
580 elseif n.id == KERN then     -- kern is ignored
581   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-KERN-SUBTYPE: "..
582                           node.type(node.getid(n))..".n.subtype,4)
583 else
584   -- math is currently only logged.
585   -- we could mark the whole as math
586   -- for inner processing the mlist_to_hlist callback is probably needed.
587   if n.id == MATH then
588     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MATH-SUBTYPE: "..
589                           node.type(node.getid(n)).."__tag_get_mathsubtype(n),4)
590   end
591   -- endmath
592   ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MC-COMPARE: current "..
593                           mccnt.." prev "..mccntprev,4)
594   if mccnt~=mccntprev then -- a new mc chunk
595     ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NEW-MC-NODE: "..
596                           node.type(node.getid(n))..
597                           " MC".. tostring(mccnt).. 
598                           " <=> PREVIOUS "..tostring(mccntprev),4)
599   if mcopen~=0 then -- there is a chunk open, close it (hope there is only one ...
600     box.list=__tag_insert_emc_node (box.list,n)
601   mcopen = mcopen - 1
602   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-INSERT-EMC: " ..

```

```

603     mcpagecnt .. " MCOPEN = " .. mcopen,3)
604 if mcopen ~=0 then
605   ltx._tag.trace.log ("WARN TAG-OPEN-MC: " .. mcopen,1)
606 end
607 end
608 if ltx._tag.mc[mccnt] then
609   if ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["artifact"] then
610     ltx._tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-INSERT-ARTIFACT: ..
611                           tostring(ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["artifact"]),3)
612     if ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["artifact"] == "" then
613       box.list = __tag_insert_bmc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact")
614     else
615       box.list = __tag_insert_bdc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact", "/Type /..ltx._tag.mc[mcc
616     end
617   else
618     ltx._tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-INSERT-TAG: ..
619                           tostring(tag),3)
620   mcpagecnt = mcpagecnt +1
621   ltx._tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-INSERT-BDC: "..mcpagecnt,3)
622   local dict= "/MCID "..mcpagecnt
623   if ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["raw"] then
624     ltx._tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-RAW: ..
625                           tostring(ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["raw"]),3)
626     dict= dict .. " " .. ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["raw"]
627   end
628   if ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"] then
629     ltx._tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-ALT: ..
630                           tostring(ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"]),3)
631     dict= dict .. " " .. ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"]
632   end
633   if ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"] then
634     ltx._tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-ACTUALTEXT: ..
635                           tostring(ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"]),3)
636     dict= dict .. " " .. ltx._tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"]
637   end
638   box.list = __tag_insert_bdc_node (box.list,n,tag, dict)
639   ltx._tag.func.store_mc_kid (mccnt,mcpagecnt,abspage)
640   ltx._tag.func.store_mc_in_page(mccnt,mcpagecnt,abspage)
641   ltx._tag.trace.show_mc_data (mccnt,3)
642 end
643 mcopen = mcopen + 1
644 else
645   if tagunmarkedbool.mode == truebool.mode then
646     ltx._tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-NOT-TAGGED: this has not been tagged, using artifact",2)
647     box.list = __tag_insert_bmc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact")
648     mcopen = mcopen + 1
649   else
650     ltx._tag.trace.log("WARN TAG-NOT-TAGGED: this has not been tagged",1)
651   end
652 end
653 mccntprev = mccnt
654 end
655 end -- end if
656 end -- end for

```

```

657 if head then
658   mccnthead, mctypehead, taghead = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (head)
659   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ENDHEAD: " ..
660     node.type(node.getid(head))..
661     " MC"..tostring(mccnthead)..  

662     " => TAG "..tostring(mctypehead)..  

663     " => "..tostring(taghead),4)
664 else
665   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ENDHEAD: ".. tostring(head),4)
666 end
667 ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-QUITTING-BOX "..
668   tostring(name)..  

669   " TYPE ".. node.type(node.getid(box)),4)
670 return mcopen,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mctypeprev
671 end
672

```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements.`)

`ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout`

This is the function used in the callback. Beside calling the traversing function it also checks if there is an open MC-chunk from a page break and insert the needed EMC literal.

```

673 function ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (box)
674   mcopen = ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (box,-1,-100,0,"Shipout",-1)
675   if mcopen~=0 then -- there is a chunk open, close it (hope there is only one ...
676     local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
677     local list = box.list
678     emcnode.data = "EMC"
679     emcnode.mode=1
680     if list then
681       list = node.insert_after (list,node.tail(list),emcnode)
682       mcopen = mcopen - 1
683       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO SHIPOUT-INSERT-LAST-EMC: MCOPEN " .. mcopen,3)
684     else
685       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("WARN SHIPOUT-UPS: this shouldn't happen",0)
686     end
687     if mcopen ~=0 then
688       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("WARN SHIPOUT-MC-OPEN: " .. mcopen,1)
689     end
690   end
691 end

```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout.`)

## 6 Parenttree

`ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line`  
`ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree`

These functions create the parent tree. The second, main function is used in the tagpdf-tree code. TODO check if the tree code can move into the backend code.

```

692 function ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (page)
693   -- we need to get page-> i=kid -> mcnum -> structnum
694   -- pay attention: the kid numbers and the page number in the parent tree start with 0!
695   local numscopy = ""
696   local pdfpage = page-1

```

```

697 if ltx.__tag.page[page] and ltx.__tag.page[page][0] then
698   mcchunks=#ltx.__tag.page[page]
699   ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUM: page "..
700     page.." has "..mcchunks.."+1 Elements ",4)
701   for i=0,mcchunks do
702     -- what does this log??
703     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-CHUNKS: "..
704       ltx.__tag.page[page][i],4)
705   end
706   if mcchunks == 0 then
707     -- only one chunk so no need for an array
708     local mcnum = ltx.__tag.page[page][0]
709     local structnum = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"]
710     local propname = "g__tag_struct"..structnum.."__prop"
711     --local objref = ltx.__tag.tables[propname]["objref"] or "XXXX"
712     local objref = __tag_pdf_object_ref('__tag/struct/'..structnum)
713     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-STRUCT-OBJREF: =====>..
714       tostring(objref),5)
715     numscopy = pdfpage .. "[".. objref .. "]"
716     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY: page " ..
717       page.." num entry = ".. numscopy,3)
718   else
719     numscopy = pdfpage .. "["
720     for i=0,mcchunks do
721       local mcnum = ltx.__tag.page[page][i]
722       local structnum = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"] or 0
723       local propname = "g__tag_struct"..structnum.."__prop"
724       --local objref = ltx.__tag.tables[propname]["objref"] or "XXXX"
725       local objref = __tag_pdf_object_ref('__tag/struct/'..structnum)
726       numscopy = numscopy .. " ".. objref
727     end
728     numscopy = numscopy .. "] "
729     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY: page " ..
730       page.." num entry = ".. numscopy,3)
731   end
732 else
733   ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO PARENTTREE-NO-DATA: page "..page,3)
734 end
735 return numscopy
736 end
737
738 function ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree (abspage)
739   for i=1,abspage do
740     line = ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (i) .. "^J"
741     tex.sprint(catlatex,line)
742   end
743 end

```

(End definition for `ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line` and `ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree`.)

744 ⟨/lua⟩

# Part IX

## The **tagpdf-roles** module

### Tags, roles and namespace code

### Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-roles-code} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to roles and structure names}
5 </header>
```

## 1 Code related to roles and structure names

### 1.1 Variables

Tags have both a name (a string) and a number (for the lua attribute). Testing a name is easier with a prop, while accessing with a number is better done with a seq. So both are used and must be kept in sync if a new tag is added. The number is only relevant for the MC type, tags with the same name from different namespaces can have the same number.

```
\g__tag_role_tags_seq
\g__tag_role_tags_prop
6 <*package>
7 \__tag_seq_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_seq %to get names (type/NS) from numbers
8 \__tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_prop %to get numbers from names (type/NS)
(End definition for \g__tag_role_tags_seq and \g__tag_role_tags_prop.)
```

\g\_\_tag\_role\_tags\_NS\_prop in pdf 2.0 tags belong to a name space. For every tag we store a default name space. The keys are the tags, the value shorthands like pdf2, or mathml. There is no need to access this from lua, so we use the standard prop commands.

```
9 \prop_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop %to namespace info
(End definition for \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop.)
```

\g\_\_tag\_role\_NS\_prop The standard namespaces are the following. The keys are the name tagpdf will use, the urls are the identifier in the namespace object.

```
mathml http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML
pdf2 http://iso.org/pdf2/ssn
pdf http://iso.org/pdf/ssn (default)
user \c__tag_role_userNS_id_str (random id, for user tags)
```

More namespaces are possible and their objects references and the ones of the namespaces must be collected so that an array can be written to the StructTreeRoot at the end (see tagpdf-tree). We use a prop to store also the object reference as it will be needed rather often.

```
10 \prop_new:N \g__tag_role_NS_prop % collect namespaces
```

(End definition for `\g_tag_role_NS_prop`.)

We need also a bunch of temporary variables:

```
\l__tag_role_tag_tma_t1  
 \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tma_t1  
 \l__tag_role_role_tma_t1  
 \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tma_t1  
 \l__tag_role_tma_t1  
 \l__tag_role_namespace_tma_t1  
 \l__tag_role_role_tma_t1  
 \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tma_t1  
  
(End definition for \l__tag_role_tag_tma_t1 and others.)
```

## 1.2 Namespaces

The following commands setups a names space. Namespace dictionaries can contain an optional /Schema and /RoleMapNS entry. We only reserve the objects but delay the writing to the finish code, where we can test if the keys and the name spaces are actually needed. This command setups objects for the name space and its rolemap. It also initialize a prop to collect the rolemaps if needed.

---

```
\_\_tag\_role\_NS\_new:nnn \_\_tag\_role\_NS\_new:nnn{\<shorthand>}{\<URI-ID>}Schema  
  
\_\_tag\_role\_NS\_new:nnn  
 15 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tag\_role\_NS\_new:nnn #1 #2 #3  
 16 {  
 17   \pdf_object_new:nn {tag/NS/#1}{dict}  
 18   \pdfdict_new:n {g\_tag\_role/Namespace\_#1_dict}  
 19   \pdf_object_new:nn {\_tag/RoleMapNS/#1}{dict}  
 20   \pdfdict_new:n {g\_tag\_role/RoleMapNS\_#1_dict}  
 21   \pdfdict_gput:nnn  
 22     {g\_tag\_role/Namespace\_#1_dict}  
 23     {Type}  
 24     {Namespace}  
 25   \pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN{utf8/string}{#2}\l_tma_str  
 26   \tl_if_empty:NF \l_tma_str  
 27   {  
 28     \pdfdict_gput:nnx  
 29       {g\_tag\_role/Namespace\_#1_dict}  
 30       {NS}  
 31       {\l_tma_str}  
 32   }  
 33 %RoleMapNS is added in tree  
 34 \tl_if_empty:nF {#3}  
 35 {  
 36   \pdfdict_gput:nnx{g\_tag\_role/Namespace\_#1_dict}  
 37     {Schema}{#3}  
 38   }  
 39   \prop_gput:Nnx \g\_tag\_role\_NS\_prop {#1}{\pdf_object_ref:n{tag/NS/#1}~}  
 40 }
```

(End definition for `\_\_tag\_role\_NS\_new:nnn`.)

We need an id for the user space. For the tests it should be possible to set it to a fix value. So we use random numbers which can be fixed by setting a seed. We fake a sort of GUID but not try to be really exact as it doesn't matter ...

```

\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str
41 \str_const:Nx \c__tag_role_userNS_id_str
42   { data:, 
43     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
44     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
45     -
46     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
47     -
48     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
49     -
50     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
51     -
52     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {16777215}}
53     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {16777215}}
54 }

```

(End definition for `\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str`.)

Now we setup the standard names spaces. Currently only if we detect pdf2.0 but this will perhaps have to change if the structure code gets to messy.

```

55 \pdf_version_compare:NnT > {1.9}
56 {
57   \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {pdf}  {http://iso.org/pdf/ssn}{}
58   \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {pdf2}  {http://iso.org/pdf2/ssn}{}
59   \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {mathml}{http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML}{}
60   \exp_args:Nnx
61   \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {user}{\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str}{}
62 }

```

### 1.3 Data

In this section we setup the standard data. At first the list of structure types. We split them in three lists, the tags with which are both in the pdf and pdf2 namespace, the one only in pdf and the one with the tags only in pdf2. We also define a rolemap for the pdfII only type to pdf so that they can always be used.

```

\c__tag_role_sttags_pdf_pdfII_clist
\c__tag_role_sttags_only_pdf_clist
\c__tag_role_sttags_only_pdfII_clist
\c__tag_role_sttags_mathml_clist
\c__tag_role_sttags_pdfII_to_pdf_prop
63 %
64 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_pdf_pdfII_clist
65 {
66   Document,    %A complete document. This is the root element
67   %of any structure tree containing
68   %multiple parts or multiple articles.
69   Part,        %A large-scale division of a document.
70   Sect,        %A container for grouping related content elements.
71   Div,         %A generic block-level element or group of elements
72   Caption,     %A brief portion of text describing a table or figure.
73   Index,
74   NonStruct,  %probably not needed
75   H,
76   H1,
77   H2,
78   H3,
79   H4,

```

```

80      H5,
81      H6,
82      P,
83      L,           %list
84      LI,          %list item (around label and list item body)
85      Lbl,          %list label
86      LBody,         %list item body
87      Table,
88      TR,           %table row
89      TH,           %table header cell
90      TD,           %table data cell
91      THead,         %table header (n rows)
92      TBody,         %table rows
93      TFoot,         %table footer
94      Span,          %generic inline marker
95      Link,          %
96      Annot,
97      Figure,
98      Formula,
99      Form,
100     % ruby warichu etc ..
101     Ruby,
102     RB,
103     RT,
104     Warichu,
105     WT,
106     WP,
107     Artifact % only MC-tag ?...
108 }
109
110 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_only_pdf_clist
111 {
112     Art,          %A relatively self-contained body of text
113             %constituting a single narrative or exposition
114     BlockQuote,    %A portion of text consisting of one or more paragraphs
115             %attributed to someone other than the author of the
116             %surrounding text.
117     TOC,          %A list made up of table of contents item entries
118             %(structure tag TOCI; see below) and/or other
119             %nested table of contents entries
120     TOCI,          %An individual member of a table of contents.
121             %This entry's children can be any of the following structure tags:
122             %Lbl, Reference, NonStruct, P, TOC
123     Index,
124     Private,
125     Quote,         %inline quote
126     Note,          %footnote, endnote. Lbl can be child
127     Reference,     %A citation to content elsewhere in the document.
128     BibEntry,       %bibentry
129     Code
130 }
131
132 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_only_pdfII_clist
133 {

```

```

134   DocumentFragment
135   ,Aside
136   ,H7
137   ,H8
138   ,H9
139   ,H10
140   ,Title
141   ,FENote
142   ,Sub
143   ,Em
144   ,Strong
145   ,Artifact
146   }
147
148 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_mathml_clist
149 {
150   abs
151   ,and
152   ,annotation
153   ,apply
154   ,approx
155   ,arccos
156   ,arccosh
157   ,arccot
158   ,arccoth
159   ,arccsc
160   ,arccsch
161   ,arcsec
162   ,arcsech
163   ,arcsin
164   ,arcsinh
165   ,arctan
166   ,arctanh
167   ,arg
168   ,bind
169   ,bvar
170   ,card
171   ,cartesianproduct
172   ,cbytes
173   ,ceiling
174   ,cerror
175   ,ci
176   ,cn
177   ,codomain
178   ,complexes
179   ,compose
180   ,condition
181   ,conjugate
182   ,cos
183   ,cosh
184   ,cot
185   ,coth
186   ,cs
187   ,csc

```

```
188 ,csch
189 ,csymbol
190 ,curl
191 ,declare
192 ,degree
193 ,determinant
194 ,diff
195 ,divergence
196 ,divide
197 ,domain
198 ,domainofapplication
199 ,emptyset
200 ,eq
201 ,equivalent
202 ,eulergamma
203 ,exists
204 ,exp
205 ,exponentiale
206 ,factorial
207 ,factorof
208 ,false
209 ,floor
210 ,fn
211 ,forall
212 ,gcd
213 ,geq
214 ,grad
215 ,gt
216 ,ident
217 ,image
218 ,imaginary
219 ,imaginaryi
220 ,implies
221 ,in
222 ,infinity
223 ,int
224 ,integers
225 ,intersect
226 ,interval
227 ,inverse
228 ,lambda
229 ,laplacian
230 ,lcm
231 ,leq
232 ,limit
233 ,ln
234 ,log
235 ,logbase
236 ,lowlimit
237 ,lt
238 ,maction
239 ,maligngroup
240 ,malignmark
241 ,math
```

```
242 ,matrix
243 ,matrixrow
244 ,max
245 ,mean
246 ,median
247 ,menclose
248 ,merror
249 ,mfenced
250 ,mfrac
251 ,mglyph
252 ,mi
253 ,min
254 ,minus
255 ,mlabeledtr
256 ,mlongdiv
257 ,mmultiscripts
258 ,mn
259 ,mo
260 ,mode
261 ,moment
262 ,momentabout
263 ,mover
264 ,mpadded
265 ,mphantom
266 ,mprescripts
267 ,mroot
268 ,mrow
269 ,ms
270 ,mscarries
271 ,mscarry
272 ,msgroup
273 ,msline
274 ,mspace
275 ,msqrt
276 ,msrow
277 ,mstack
278 ,mstyle
279 ,msub
280 ,msubsup
281 ,msup
282 ,mtable
283 ,mtd
284 ,mtext
285 ,mtr
286 ,munder
287 ,munderover
288 ,naturalnumbers
289 ,neq
290 ,none
291 ,not
292 ,notanumber
293 ,notin
294 ,notprsubset
295 ,notsubset
```

```

296   ,or
297   ,otherwise
298   ,outerproduct
299   ,partialdiff
300   ,pi
301   ,piece
302   ,piecewise
303   ,plus
304   ,power
305   ,primes
306   ,product
307   ,prsubset
308   ,quotient
309   ,rationals
310   ,real
311   ,reals
312   ,reln
313   ,rem
314   ,root
315   ,scalarproduct
316   ,sdev
317   ,sec
318   ,sech
319   ,selector
320   ,semantics
321   ,sep
322   ,set
323   ,setdiff
324   ,share
325   ,sin
326   ,sinh
327   ,subset
328   ,sum
329   ,tan
330   ,tanh
331   ,tendsto
332   ,times
333   ,transpose
334   ,true
335   ,union
336   ,uplimit
337   ,variance
338   ,vector
339   ,vectorproduct
340   ,xor
341 }
342 \prop_const_from_keyval:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_pdfII_to_pdf_prop
343 {
344     DocumentFragment = Art,
345     Aside = Note,
346     Title = H1,
347     Sub = Span,
348     H7 = H6 ,
349

```

```

350     H8      = H6 ,
351     H9      = H6 ,
352     H10     = H6,
353     FENote= Note,
354     Em     = Span,
355     Strong= Span,
356   }

```

(End definition for \c\_tag\_role\_sttags\_pdf\_pdfII\_clist and others.)

```

357 % get tag name from number: \seq_item:Nn \g_tag_role_tags_seq { n }
358 % get tag number from name: \prop_item:Nn \g_tag_role_tags_prop { name }
359
360 \clist_map_inline:Nn \c_tag_role_sttags_pdf_pdfII_clist
361 {
362   \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g_tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
363   \prop_gput:Nnn \g_tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ pdf2 }
364 }
365 \clist_map_inline:Nn \c_tag_role_sttags_only_pdf_clist
366 {
367   \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g_tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
368   \prop_gput:Nnn \g_tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ pdf }
369 }
370 \clist_map_inline:Nn \c_tag_role_sttags_only_pdfII_clist
371 {
372   \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g_tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
373   \prop_gput:Nnn \g_tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ pdf2 }
374 }
375 \pdf_version_compare:NnT > {1.9}
376 {
377   \clist_map_inline:Nn \c_tag_role_sttags_mathml_clist
378   {
379     \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g_tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
380     \prop_gput:Nnn \g_tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ mathml }
381   }
382 }

```

For luatex and the MC we need a name/number relation. The name space is not relevant.

```

383 \int_step_inline:nnnn { 1 }{ 1 }{ \seq_count:N \g_tag_role_tags_seq }
384 {
385   \__tag_prop_gput:Nxn \g_tag_role_tags_prop
386   {
387     \seq_item:Nn \g_tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
388   }
389   { #1 }
390 }

```

## 1.4 Adding new tags and rolemapping

### 1.4.1 pdf 1.7 and earlier

With this versions only RoleMap is filled. At first the dictionary:

```

g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict
391 \pdfdict_new:n {g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
(End definition for g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict.)

\__tag_role_add_tag:nn The pdf 1.7 version has only two arguments: new and rolemap name. To make pdf 2.0 types usable we directly define a rolemapping for them.
392 \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nn %(new) name, reference to old
393 {
394     \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_role_tags_prop {#1}
395     {
396         \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
397         {
398             \msg_info:nnn { tag }{new-tag}{#1}
399         }
400         \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
401         \__tag_prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_role_tags_prop { #1 }
402         {
403             \seq_count:N \g__tag_role_tags_seq
404         }
405         \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ user }
406     }
407     \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn {#1}{#2}
408     \tl_if_empty:nF { #2 }
409     {
410         \pdfdict_gput:nnx {g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
411         {#1}
412         {\pdf_name_from_unicode:e:n{#2}}
413     }
414 }
415 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nn {VV}
416
417 \pdf_version_compare:NnT < {2.0}
418 {
419     \prop_map_inline:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_pdfII_to_pdf_prop
420     {
421         \__tag_role_add_tag:nn {#1}{#2}
422     }
423 }
424

(End definition for \__tag_role_add_tag:nn.)

```

#### 1.4.2 The pdf 2.0 version

```

\__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn The pdf 2.0 version takes four arguments: tag/namespace/role/namespace
425 \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn %tag/namespace/role/namespace
426 {
427     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
428     {
429         \msg_info:nnn { tag }{new-tag}{#1}
430     }
431     \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
432     \__tag_prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_role_tags_prop { #1 }

```

```

433     {
434         \seq_count:N \g__tag_role_tags_seq
435     }
436     \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ #2 }
437     \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn {#1}{#3}
438     \pdfdict_gput:nnx {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_#2_dict}{#1}
439     {
440         [
441             \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#3}
442             \c_space_tl
443             \pdf_object_ref:n {tag/NS/#4}
444         ]
445     }
446 }
447 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn {VVVV}

(End definition for \__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn.)

```

## 1.5 Key-val user interface

The user interface use the key `add-new-tag`, which takes either a keyval list as argument, or a tag/role.

```

tag
tag-namespace 448 \keys_define:nn { __tag / tag-role }
role        449   {
role-namespace 450   ,tag .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
add-new-tag    451   ,tag-namespace .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
              452   ,role .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
              453   ,role-namespace .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
454 }
455
456 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
457   {
458     add-new-tag .code:n =
459       {
460         \keys_set_known:nnN
461           {__tag/tag-role}
462           {
463             tag-namespace=user,
464             role-namespace=, %so that we can test for it.
465             #1
466             }{__tag/tag-role}\l_tmpa_tl
467         \tl_if_empty:NF \l_tmpa_tl
468         {
469             \exp_args:NNno \seq_set_split:Nnn \l_tmpa_seq { / } {\l_tmpa_tl/}
470             \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq {1} }
471             \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq {2} }
472         }
473         \tl_if_empty:NT \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
474         {
475             \prop_get:NVNTF
476               \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop
477               \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl

```

```

478   \l__tag_role_namespace_tmpa_t1
479   {
480     \prop_if_in:NVF\g__tag_role_NS_prop \l__tag_role_namespace_tmpa_t1
481     {
482       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_role_namespace_tmpa_t1 {user}
483     }
484   }
485   {
486     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_role_namespace_tmpa_t1 {user}
487   }
488 }
489 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
490 {
491   %TODO add check for emptyness?
492   \__tag_role_add_tag:VV
493     \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_t1
494     \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_t1
495   }
496   {
497     \__tag_role_add_tag:VVVV
498     \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_t1
499     \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_t1
500     \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_t1
501     \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_t1
502   }
503 }
504 }
505 </package>

```

(End definition for `tag` and others. These functions are documented on page 72.)

## Part X

# The **tagpdf-space** module

## Code related to real space chars

### Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 {*header}
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-space-code} {2021-08-27} {0.92}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to real space chars}
5 </header>
```

## 1 Code for interword spaces

The code is engine/backend dependant. Basically only pdftex and luatex support real space chars. Most of the code for luatex which uses attributes is in the lua code, here are only the keys.

```
interwordspace
show-spaces 6 {*package}
7 \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
8 {
9   \sys_if_output_pdf:TF
10  {
11    \pdflglyphunicode{space}{0020}
12    \keys_define:nn {__tag / setup}
13    {
14      interwordspace .choices:nn = { true, on } { \pdfinterwordspaceon },
15      interwordspace .choices:nn = { false, off } { \pdfinterwordspaceoff },
16      interwordspace .default:n = true,
17      show-spaces .bool_set:N = \l__tag_showspaces_bool
18    }
19  }
20  {
21    \keys_define:nn {__tag / setup}
22    {
23      interwordspace .choices:nn = { true, on, false, off }
24      { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{dvi} },
25      interwordspace .default:n = true,
26      show-spaces .bool_set:N = \l__tag_showspaces_bool
27    }
28  }
29 }
30
31 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
32 {
33   \keys_define:nn {__tag / setup}
34   {
35     interwordspace .choices:nn =
36       { true, on }
```

```

38         {
39             \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
40             \lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon()}
41         },
42     interwordspace .choices:nn =
43         { false, off }
44         {
45             \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
46             \lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff()}
47         },
48     interwordspace .default:n = true,
49     show-spaces .choice:,
50     show-spaces / true .code:n =
51             {\lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces=true}},
52     show-spaces / false .code:n =
53             {\lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces=nil}},
54     show-spaces .default:n = true
55 }
56 }
57
58 \sys_if_engine_xetex:T
59 {
60     \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
61     {
62         interwordspace .choices:nn = { true, on }
63             { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{xetex} },
64         interwordspace .choices:nn = { false, off }
65             { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{xetex} },
66         interwordspace .default:n = true,
67         show-spaces .bool_set:N = \l__tag_showspaces_bool
68     }
69 }

```

(End definition for `interwordspace` and `show-spaces`. These functions are documented on page ??.)

`\__tag_fakespace:` For luatex we need a command for the fake space as equivalent of the pdftex primitive.

```

70 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
71 {
72     \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_fakespace:
73     {
74         \group_begin:
75         \lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.fakespace()}
76         \skip_horizontal:n{\c_zero_skip}
77         \group_end:
78     }
79 }
80 ⟨/package⟩

```

(End definition for `\__tag_fakespace:..`)

# Index

The italic numbers denote the pages where the corresponding entry is described, numbers underlined point to the definition, all others indicate the places where it is used.

Symbols	
\` . . . . .	10
\` . . . . .	218, 232
<b>A</b>	
activate . . . . .	<u>178</u>
activate-all . . . . .	<u>153</u>
activate-mc . . . . .	<u>153</u>
activate-space . . . . .	<u>153</u>
activate-struct . . . . .	<u>153</u>
activate-tree . . . . .	<u>153</u>
actualtext . . . . .	<u>46, 73, 198, 293, 357</u>
add-new-tag . . . . .	<u>448</u>
\AddToHook 13, 16, 51, 210, 224, 238, 249, 283	
AF . . . . .	<u>73, 396</u>
AFinline . . . . .	<u>73, 396</u>
AFinline-o . . . . .	<u>73, 396</u>
alttext . . . . .	<u>46, 73, 198, 293, 357</u>
artifact . . . . .	<u>46, 198, 357</u>
artifact-bool internal commands:	
__artifact-bool . . . . .	<u>102</u>
artifact-type internal commands:	
__artifact-type . . . . .	<u>102</u>
attr-unknown . . . . .	<u>33</u>
attribute . . . . .	<u>74, 625</u>
attribute-class . . . . .	<u>74, 591</u>
<b>B</b>	
bool commands:	
\bool_gset_eq:NN . . . . .	<u>303, 316</u>
\bool_gset_false:N 31, 45, 190, 304, 351	
\bool_gset_true:N . . . . .	<u>30, 39, 160, 319</u>
\bool_if:NTF . . . . .	<u>9, 9, 18, 23, 24, 33, 33, 69, 133, 155, 169, 177, 181, 192, 212, 212, 216, 220, 225, 226, 230, 251, 254, 298, 311, 321, 338, 479</u>
\bool_if:nTF . . . . .	<u>6, 258</u>
\bool_lazy_all:nTF . . . . .	<u>50</u>
\bool_lazy_and:nnTF . . . . .	<u>67, 77</u>
\bool_lazy_and_p:nn . . . . .	<u>8</u>
\bool_new:N . . . . .	<u>11, 15, 16, 29, 56, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 88, 90, 200, 201, 294</u>
\bool_set_false:N . . . . .	<u>149, 150, 161, 191, 275, 297</u>
\bool_set_true:N . . . . .	<u>87, 89, 274</u>
box commands:	
\box_dp:N . . . . .	<u>173, 177</u>
\box_ht:N . . . . .	<u>163</u>
\box_new:N . . . . .	<u>77, 78</u>
\box_set_dp:Nn . . . . .	<u>171, 173</u>
\box_set_eq:NN . . . . .	<u>186</u>
\box_set_ht:Nn . . . . .	<u>170, 172</u>
\box_use_drop:N . . . . .	<u>175, 179</u>
\boxmaxdepth . . . . .	<u>57, 174</u>
<b>C</b>	
\c . . . . .	<u>146, 147</u>
c@g internal commands:	
\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int . . . . .	<u>9, 21, 30, 43, 45, 50, 61, 67, 112, 131, 163, 233, 238, 267, 307, 340</u>
\c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int . . . . .	<u>52</u>
\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int . . . . .	<u>6, 46, 101, 104, 106, 304, 310, 323, 335, 347, 359, 366, 379, 391, 403, 414, 418, 419, 422, 424, 430, 434, 435, 438, 440, 449, 450, 451, 452, 455, 458, 462, 475, 477, 483, 618, 621, 663</u>
clist commands:	
\clist_const:Nn 64, 79, 80, 110, 132, 148	
\clist_map_inline:Nn 360, 365, 370, 377	
\clist_map_inline:nn . . . . .	<u>373</u>
\clist_new:N . . . . .	<u>75</u>
\clist_set:Nn . . . . .	<u>595, 629</u>
color commands:	
\color_select:n . . . . .	<u>218, 232</u>
cs commands:	
\cs_generate_variant:Nn . . . . .	<u>37, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 98, 99, 100, 108, 113, 121, 124, 126, 140, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 152, 153, 230, 284, 295, 415, 447, 564</u>
\cs_gset_eq:NN . . . . .	<u>183</u>
\cs_if_exist:NTF . . . . .	<u>53, 253, 285</u>
\cs_if_exist_p:N . . . . .	<u>9</u>
\cs_if_free:NTF . . . . .	<u>39</u>
\cs_new:Nn . . . . .	<u>21, 69, 74, 100, 122, 127, 131, 312</u>
\cs_new:Npn . . . . .	<u>9, 47, 55, 57, 61, 90, 122, 127, 160, 197, 285, 565</u>
\cs_new_protected:Nn . . . . .	<u>72, 154, 185, 346, 392, 425, 504, 530</u>
\cs_new_protected:Npn . . . . .	<u>15, 16, 25, 29, 32, 35, 38, 44, 50, 56, 57, 58, 60, 63, 67, 69, 71, 77, 82, 85, 86, 93, 100, 100, 101, 109, 113</u>

115, 115, 118, 123, 125, 131, 142,  
 142, 146, 146, 147, 150, 153, 154,  
 157, 169, 178, 180, 182, 185, 187,  
 204, 210, 212, 231, 234, 251, 274,  
 278, 279, 279, 280, 281, 285, 295,  
 296, 300, 304, 308, 313, 444, 555, 578  
`\cs_set:Npn` ..... 38, 43  
`\cs_set_eq:NN` ..... 43, 46, 47, 48,  
 73, 74, 75, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135,  
 136, 137, 138, 152, 227, 228, 229,  
 325, 326, 327, 328, 332, 333, 334, 335  
`\cs_set_protected:Nn` ..... 167  
`\cs_set_protected:Npn` ..... 9, 16, 23, 30, 49, 56  
`\cs_to_str:N` 12, 19, 26, 33, 52, 53, 59, 60

## D

`\DeclareDocumentMetadata` ..... 21  
`\DeclareOption` ..... 30, 31  
 default commands:  
`default_fontid` ..... 432  
`default_space_char` ..... 432  
 dim commands:  
`\c_max_dim` ..... 162, 187  
`\c_zero_dim` ..... 170, 171, 172  
`\documentclass` ..... 22

## E

E ..... 73, 293  
`exclude-header-footer` ..... 27  
`\ExecuteOptions` ..... 32  
 exp commands:  
`\exp_args:Ne` ..... 287, 453  
`\exp_args:Nee` ..... 57  
`\exp_args:NNno` ..... 469  
`\exp_args:NNnx` ..... 39  
`\exp_args>NNx` ..... 39, 79, 82, 188, 208  
`\exp_args:Nnx` ..... 60, 273, 276, 280, 391  
`\exp_args:NV` ..... 173, 310, 324, 335  
`\exp_args:Nx` ..... 115, 240  
`\exp_not:n` ..... 272

## F

fi commands:  
`\fi:` ..... 19  
 file commands:  
`\file_input:n` ..... 188  
`\fontencoding` ..... 6  
`\fontfamily` ..... 6  
`\fontseries` ..... 6  
`\fontshape` ..... 6  
`\fontsize` ..... 6  
`\footins` ..... 256

## G

group commands:  
`\group_begin:` ..... 74, 148, 158, 317, 413, 429, 448  
`\group_end:` ..... 77, 152, 182, 343, 425, 441, 499

## H

hbox commands:  
`\hbox_set:Nn` ..... 164, 165  
 hook commands:  
`\hook_gput_code:nnn` ..... 7, 7, 21, 26, 50, 53,  
 180, 181, 223, 227, 340, 353, 363, 376  
`\hook_use:n` ..... 214

## I

if commands:  
`\if_mode_horizontal:` ..... 19  
`\ignorespaces` ..... 25, 13  
 int commands:  
`\int_case:nnTF` ..... 167  
`\int_compare:nNnTF` ..... 61, 73, 102, 109, 132, 159,  
 162, 166, 187, 193, 218, 240, 396, 427  
`\int_compare:nTF` ..... 77, 227, 611, 613, 615, 633, 659  
`\int_eval:n` ..... 88, 131, 232,  
 255, 272, 304, 310, 323, 335, 347,  
 359, 366, 379, 391, 403, 450, 451,  
 452, 455, 458, 462, 483, 618, 621, 663  
`\int_gincr:N` 163, 214, 228, 233, 307, 449  
`\int_gset:Nn` ..... 55, 251  
`\int_gzero:N` ..... 8, 259  
`\int_new:N` ..... 10, 76, 81, 202, 203  
`\int_rand:n` ..... 43, 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 53  
`\int_set:Nn` ..... 163, 166, 169, 170, 171  
`\int_step_inline:nmmn` ..... 46, 71, 74, 91, 212, 218, 383  
`\int_to_Hex:n` ..... 43, 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 53  
`\int_use:N` ..... 9, 21, 30,  
 43, 44, 45, 50, 61, 67, 101, 104, 106,  
 110, 112, 114, 126, 218, 232, 238,  
 245, 246, 267, 340, 414, 418, 419,  
 422, 424, 430, 434, 435, 438, 440, 565  
 intarray commands:  
`\intarray_gset:Nnn` ..... 190  
`\intarray_item:Nn` ..... 192, 195  
`\intarray_new:Nn` ..... 182  
 interwordspace ..... 6  
 iow commands:  
`\iow_newline:` ..... 171, 198  
`\iow_now:Nn` ..... 39  
`\iow_term:n` 136, 139, 145, 149, 167, 191

K	M
keys commands:	\maxdimen ..... 185
\keys_define:nn ..... 12, 21, 34, 54, 60, 66, 102, 128, 153, 171, 183, 198, 204, 293, 320, 357, 396, 448, 456, 584, 591, 625	mc-current ..... 26, 16, 66
\keys_set:nn ..... 9, 51, 164, 187, 277, 281, 320, 392, 461	mc-data ..... 26, 54
\keys_set_known:nnnN ..... 460	mc-label-unknown ..... 9
L	mc-marks ..... 128
label ..... 46, 73, 198, 293, 357	mc-nested ..... 6
lang ..... 73, 293	mc-not-open ..... 13
legacy commands:	mc-popped ..... 14
\legacy_if:nTF ..... 37	mc-pushed ..... 14
\llap ..... 218	mc-tag-missing ..... 8
\log ..... 162	mc-used-twice ..... 12
ltx. internal commands:	\MessageBreak ..... 15, 19, 20, 21
ltx._tag.func.fakespace ..... 351	msg commands:
ltx._tag.func.fill_parent_tree_- line ..... 692	\msg_error:nn ..... 90, 111, 261, 473
ltx._tag.func.get_num_from ..... 258	\msg_error:nnn ..... 173, 248, 601, 639
ltx._tag.func.get_tag_from ..... 277	\msg_error:nnnn ..... 242
ltx._tag.func.mark_page_- elements ..... 521	\msg_info:nn ..... 104, 161, 165, 398, 429
ltx._tag.func.mark_shipout ..... 673	\msg_info:nnnn ..... 134
ltx._tag.func.markspaceoff ..... 415	\g_msg_module_name_prop ..... 25, 27
ltx._tag.func.markspaceon ..... 415	\msg_new:nnn ..... 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 22, 23, 26, 27, 29, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41
ltx._tag.func.mc_insert_kids ..... 469	\msg_new:nnnn ..... 44
ltx._tag.func.mc_num_of_kids ..... 307	\msg_note:nn ..... 124
ltx._tag.func.output_num_from ..... 258	\msg_warning:nn ..... 108
ltx._tag.func.output_parenttree ..... 692	\msg_warning:nnn ..... 24, 36, 45, 63, 65, 97, 120, 127, 138, 146, 154, 177, 200, 551
ltx._tag.func.output_tag_from ..... 277	N
ltx._tag.func.pdf_object_ref ..... 336	new-tag ..... 37
ltx._tag.func.space_chars_- shipout ..... 436	newattribute ..... 74, 578
ltx._tag.func.store_mc_data ..... 292	\newcommand ..... 274, 275
ltx._tag.func.store_mc_in_page ..... 513	\newcounter ..... 7, 8, 52
ltx._tag.func.store_mc_kid ..... 301	\NewDocumentCommand ..... 7, 11, 17, 23, 28, 32, 37, 42, 49, 195, 276
ltx._tag.func.store_mc_label ..... 297	\newlabeldata ..... 41
ltx._tag.func.store_struct_- mcabs ..... 501	\newmarks ..... 10
ltx._tag.trace.log ..... 172	\nointerlineskip ..... 178
ltx._tag.trace.show_all_mc_data ..... 229	P
ltx._tag.trace.show_mc_data ..... 214	\PackageError ..... 13
ltx._tag.trace.show_prop ..... 189	para-hook-count-wrong ..... 44
ltx._tag.trace.show_seq ..... 180	paratagging ..... 27, 204
ltx._tag.trace.show_struct_data ..... 235	paratagging-show ..... 27, 204
lua commands:	pdf commands:
\lua_now:n ..... 8, 11, 12, 19, 19, 26, 28, 33, 35, 40, 40, 43, 45, 46, 51, 52, 52, 53, 53, 59, 60, 60, 64, 75, 77, 77, 78, 85, 87, 97, 102, 111, 122, 124, 129, 140, 204, 212, 226, 243, 256, 266	\pdf_bdc:nn ..... 229
	\pdf_bmc:n ..... 227
	\pdf_emc: ..... 228
	\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n ..... 306, 412, 441
	\pdf_object_if_exist:n ..... 91
	\pdf_object_if_exist:nTF ..... 100, 104, 236, 400, 414, 430

\pdf_object_new:nn	25, 27, 39, 91, 94, 95, 96, 133, 147, 291, 363, 368, 373, 380, 405, 436, 580, 648
\pdf_object_ref:n	29, 37, 39, 41, 89, 92, 102, 106, 120, 183, 198, 279, 405, 424, 440, 443, 486, 547
\pdf_object_ref_last:	136, 648
\pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn	128, 643
\pdf_object_write:nn	141, 149, 177, 193, 200, 205, 241
\pdf_pageobject_ref:n	96
\pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN	25
\pdf_uncompress:	184
\pdf_version_compare:NnTF	55, 375, 417, 489
pdfannot commands:	
\pdfannot_dict_put:nnn	93, 347, 370, 388, 393
\pdfannot_link_ref_last:	357, 380
pdfdict commands:	
\pdfdict_gput:nnn	21, 28, 36, 197, 410, 438
\pdfdict_if_empty:nTF	191
\pdfdict_new:n	18, 20, 391
\pdfdict_use:n	151, 195, 202
\pdffakespace	26, 193
pdffile commands:	
\pdffile_embed_stream:nnn	94, 416, 432
\pdffglyptounicode	11
\pdfinterwordspaceon	14, 15
pdfmanagement commands:	
\pdfmanagement_add:nnn	25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229
\pdfmanagement_if_active_p:	9, 10
\pdfmanagement_remove:nn	182
prg commands:	
\prg_do_nothing:	75, 183, 332, 333, 334, 335
\prg_generate_conditional_	variant:Nnn
91	
\prg_new_conditional:Nnn	59, 218
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn	48, 65, 75, 250, 256, 267
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn	73, 225
\prg_return_false:	62, 69, 72, 82, 222, 253, 265, 271
\prg_return_true:	59, 69, 70, 79, 221, 254, 264, 270
\ProcessOptions	33
prop commands:	
\prop_clear:N	73
\prop_const_from_keyval:Nn	343
\prop_count:N	94
\prop_get:NnNTF	89, 96, 115, 130, 243, 307, 475
\prop_gput:Nnn	25, 27, 39, 91, 94, 95, 96, 133, 147, 291, 363, 368, 373, 380, 405, 436, 580, 648
\prop_if_exist:NTF	25, 534
\prop_if_in:NnTF	59, 87, 95, 175, 225, 394, 480, 599, 637, 641
\prop_item:Nn	32, 63, 83, 110, 136, 162, 229, 290, 299, 358, 646, 653
\prop_map_inline:Nn	189, 419
\prop_map_tokens:Nn	207
\prop_new:N	9, 10, 11, 72, 131, 574, 577
\prop_put:Nnn	80, 96
\prop_show:N	58, 88, 138, 494, 497, 621, 642
\ProvidesExplFile	3
\ProvidesExplPackage	3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 570
Q	
\quad	158, 159
R	
raw	46, 198, 357
ref	73, 293
ref commands:	
\ref_attribute_gset:nnnn	100, 102, 109, 111, 113
\ref_label:nn	97, 118
\ref_value:nn	376
\ref_value:nmm	7, 53, 55, 124, 129
ref internal commands:	
\__ref_value:nnn	58, 61
regex commands:	
\regex_replace_once:nnN	145
\RequirePackage	20, 34, 194, 197
\rlap	232
role	448
role-missing	34
role-namespace	448
role-tag	37
role-unknown	34
role-unknown-tag	34
S	
\selectfont	6
seq commands:	
\seq_clear:N	157, 217
\seq_const_from_clist:Nn	17, 29
\seq_count:N	169, 383, 403, 434, 611, 613, 615, 633, 659
\seq_get:NNTF	257, 469, 517, 524
\seq_gpop>NN	510
\seq_gpop:NNTF	86, 511
\seq_gpop_left>NN	144

\seq\_gpush:Nn . . . . . 12, 14, 69, 76, 475, 476  
 \seq\_gput\_left:Nn . . . . . 149, 603  
 \seq\_gput\_right:Nn . . . . . 32, 134, 134, 237  
 \seq\_gremove\_duplicates:N . . . . . 157  
 \seq\_gset\_eq:NN . . . . . 152, 164, 214  
 \seq\_if\_empty:NTF . . . . . 193  
 \seq\_item:Nn . . . . . 109, 111, 118, 122, 129, 133, 135, 188, 260, 262, 269, 300, 301, 357, 387, 470, 471  
 \seq\_log:N . . . . . 166, 168, 174, 192  
 \seq\_map\_inline:Nn . . . . . 158, 215, 597, 635  
 \seq\_new:N . . . . . 11, 11, 12, 13, 13, 14, 15, 18, 73, 74, 132, 575  
 \seq\_put\_right:Nn . . . . . 159  
 \seq\_remove\_all:Nn . . . . . 162  
 \seq\_set\_eq:NN . . . . . 200, 201  
 \seq\_set\_from\_clist:NN . . . . . 596, 630  
 \seq\_set\_from\_clist:Nn 80, 83, 189, 209  
 \seq\_set\_map:NNn . . . . . 158, 605  
 \seq\_set\_split:Nnn . . . . . 98, 299, 469  
 \seq\_show:N . . . . . 51, 137, 141, 142, 160, 161, 163, 175, 247, 478, 495, 498, 507  
 \seq\_use:Nn . . . . . 103, 104, 158, 159, 169, 198, 200, 612  
 \l\_tmpa\_seq 217, 237, 247, 469, 470, 471  
 shipout commands:  
     \g\_shipout\_READONLY\_int . . . . . 44, 110, 126, 232  
 show-spaces . . . . . 6  
 \ShowTagging . . . . . 13, 26, 49  
 skip commands:  
     \skip\_horizontal:n . . . . . 76  
     \c\_zero\_skip . . . . . 76  
 stash . . . . . 46, 73, 102, 293  
 \stepcounter . . . . . 282  
 str commands:  
     \str\_const:Nn . . . . . 41  
     \str\_if\_eq:nnTF . . . . . 120, 269  
     \str\_if\_eq\_p:nn . . . . . 260, 262  
     \str\_new:N . . . . . 71  
     \str\_set\_convert:Nnnn . . . . . 99, 219, 236, 317, 329, 341, 353, 370, 380, 385  
     \str\_use:N . . . . . 230, 249  
     \l\_tmpa\_str . . . . . 25, 26, 31  
 \string . . . . . 20, 21, 22, 264  
 struct-faulty-nesting . . . . . 23  
 struct-label-unknown . . . . . 29  
 struct-missing-tag . . . . . 26  
 struct-no-objnum . . . . . 22  
 struct-show-closing . . . . . 31  
 struct-stack . . . . . 26, 171  
 struct-used-twice . . . . . 27

sys commands:  
     \sys\_if\_engine\_luatex:TF . . . . .  
         . . . . . 30, 32, 46, 47, 58, 70, 71, 186, 193  
     \sys\_if\_engine\_pdftex:TF . . . . . 7, 48  
     \sys\_if\_engine\_xetex:TF . . . . . 58  
     \sys\_if\_output\_pdf:TF . . . . . 9, 11  
 sys-no-interwordspace . . . . . 41

T

tabsorder . . . . . 174  
 tag . . . . . 46, 72, 198, 293, 357, 448  
 tag commands:  
     \tag\_get:n . . . . . 13, 83, 47, 47, 69, 72  
     \tag\_if\_active: . . . . . 48  
     \tag\_if\_active:TF . . . . . 13, 48  
     \tag\_if\_active\_p: . . . . . 13, 48  
     \tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_begin:n . . . . . 45, 50, 50  
     \tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_end: . . . . . 45, 50, 57  
     \tag\_mc\_begin:n . . . . .  
         . . . . . 8, 45, 13, 53, 94, 154, 154, 217, 221, 231, 306, 313, 313, 346, 369  
     \tag\_mc\_begin\_pop:n . . . . .  
         . . . . . 45, 61, 63, 82, 313, 360, 383  
     \tag\_mc\_end: . . . . . 45, 20, 60, 73, 185, 185, 219, 229, 233, 310, 313, 346, 358, 381  
     \tag\_mc\_end\_push: . . . . .  
         . . . . . 45, 52, 63, 63, 300, 344, 367  
     \tag\_mc\_if\_in: . . . . . 59, 73, 225  
     \tag\_mc\_if\_in:TF . . . . . 45, 30, 218  
     \tag\_mc\_if\_in\_p: . . . . . 45, 218  
     \tag\_mc\_use:n . . . . . 45, 25, 29, 29  
     \tag\_stop\_group\_begin: . . . . . 54, 146, 146  
     \tag\_stop\_group\_end: . . . . . 59, 146, 152  
     \tag\_struct\_begin:n . . . . .  
         . . . . . 72, 34, 215, 345, 368, 444, 444  
     \tag\_struct\_end: . . . . .  
         . . . . . 72, 39, 235, 359, 382, 444, 504  
     \tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn . . . . .  
         . . . . . 72, 88, 357, 380, 555, 555, 564  
     \tag\_struct\_parent\_int: . . . . .  
         . . . . . 72, 88, 350, 357, 373, 380, 555, 565  
     \tag\_struct\_use:n . . . . . 72, 44, 530, 530  
 tag internal commands:  
     \_\_tag\_activate\_mark\_space . . . . . 415  
     \g\_\_tag\_active\_mc\_bool . . . . .  
         . . . . . 33, 53, 67, 82, 156  
     \l\_\_tag\_active\_mc\_bool 56, 67, 86, 150  
     \g\_\_tag\_active\_space\_bool . . . . .  
         . . . . . 9, 39, 45, 82, 155  
     \g\_\_tag\_active\_struct\_bool . . . . .  
         . . . . . 52, 77, 82, 158, 254

```

\l__tag_active_struct_bool ..... 55, 77, 86, 149
\g__tag_active_tree_bool ..... 9, 23, 54, 82, 157, 212, 225
\__tag_add_document_structure:n .. 178, 178, 189
\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn ..... 58, 160, 160, 212
\__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_-_
    stream:Nn ..... 58,
      58, 182, 182, 256, 260, 267, 269
\g__tag_attr_class_used_seq .... 157, 158, 573, 603
\g__tag_attr_entries_prop .... 163, 573, 580, 599, 637, 642, 646
\__tag_attr_new_entry:nn 578, 578, 588
\g__tag_attr_objref_prop ..... 573, 641, 648, 653
\l__tag_attr_value_t1 ..... 573, 631, 650, 655, 657, 661, 665
\__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn ...
    ..... 123, 123, 407, 437
\__tag_check_if_active_mc: ..... 65
\__tag_check_if_active_mc:TF ...
    ... 65, 65, 84, 156, 184, 187, 315, 348
\__tag_check_if_active_struct: ... 75
\__tag_check_if_active_struct:TF
    ..... 31, 65, 446, 508, 532, 558
\__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley: ... 250
\__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF ..
    ..... 134, 155
\__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing: 256
\__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF
    ..... 105, 143, 160, 256
\__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing_-
    p: ..... 256
\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing: 267
\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF
    ..... 147, 148, 164, 267
\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing_-
    p: ..... 267
\__tag_check_info_closing_-
    struct:n ..... 100, 100, 108, 513
\__tag_check_init_mc_used: ...
    ..... 180, 180, 183, 189
\__tag_check_mc_if_nested: ...
    ..... 142, 142, 159, 318
\__tag_check_mc_if_open: ...
    ..... 142, 150, 189, 350
\__tag_check_mc_in_galley:TF ... 250
\__tag_check_mc_in_galley_p: ... 250
\__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn ...
    ..... 70, 77, 90, 93, 98, 157, 157
\__tag_check_mc_tag:N ..... 166, 169, 169, 328
\__tag_check_mc_used:n ...
    ..... 133, 185, 185, 287
\g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray ...
    ..... 180, 190, 192, 195
\__tag_check_no_open_struct: ...
    ..... 109, 109, 515, 522
\__tag_check_show_MCID_by_page: ...
    ..... 204, 204
\__tag_check_struct_used:n ...
    ..... 113, 113, 537
\__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n ...
    ..... 85, 85, 462
\__tag_check_structure_tag:N ...
    ..... 93, 93, 302
\__tag_check_typeout_v:n ...
    ..... 43, 43, 103, 104, 107,
      142, 150, 157, 167, 195, 204, 259, 264
\__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin: ...
    ..... 295, 325, 326
\__tag_exclude_headfoot_end: ...
    ..... 308, 327, 328
__tag_fakespace ..... 351
\__tag_fakespace: ..... 70, 72, 197
\__tag_finish_structure: ...
    ..... 13, 16, 210, 210
\__tag_get_data_mc_tag: ...
    ..... 197, 197, 312, 312
\__tag_get_data_struct_tag: 285, 285
__tag_get_mathsubtype ..... 250
\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: ...
    ..... 9,
      9, 19, 20, 60, 90, 93, 101, 146, 154,
      173, 179, 206, 214, 230, 247, 260, 270
__tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag ..... 244
__tag_get_num_from ..... 258
__tag_get_tag_from ..... 277
\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: ...
    ..... 281, 290, 328, 335
\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: ...
    ..... 279, 288, 327, 334
\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: ...
    ..... 280, 289, 326, 333
\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: ...
    ..... 278, 287, 325, 332
\g__tag_in_mc_bool ..... 11, 18,
    160, 190, 220, 303, 304, 316, 319, 351
__tag_insert_bdc_node ..... 329
__tag_insert_bmc_node ..... 322
__tag_insert_emc_node ..... 315
\__tag_lastpagelabel: ..... 35, 35, 52
__tag_log ..... 172

```

```

\l__tag_loglevel_int .....
    ..... 81, 102, 132, 160, 163, 163,
    166, 166, 169, 170, 171, 187, 396, 427
\__tag_mark_spaces .....
\__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n
    ..... 16, 38, 74, 325
\l__tag_mc_artifact_bool .....
    ..... 15, 105, 161, 169, 191, 321
\l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl .....
    ..... 14, 109, 113, 117,
    121, 125, 129, 133, 137, 283, 323, 325
\__tag_mc_bdc:nn 226, 229, 230, 270, 302
\__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n .. 116, 231, 274
\__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn .....
    ..... 231, 231, 276, 281
\__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn .....
    ..... 16, 16, 37, 73, 332
\__tag_mc_bmc:n ..... 226, 227, 298
\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact: 296, 296, 309
\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n 296, 300, 310
\l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq .....
    ..... 58, 14, 83, 104,
    142, 154, 159, 201, 209, 214, 252, 269
\__tag_mc_disable_marks: .... 71, 71
\__tag_mc_emc: .... 151, 226, 228, 353
\__tag_mc_end_marks: .. 16, 56, 75, 354
\l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq .....
    ..... 57, 14, 80, 103, 141, 158,
    189, 192, 193, 200, 201, 252, 260, 262
\g__tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq ... 11
\__tag_mc_get_marks: 77, 77, 133, 154
\__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N .....
    ..... 112, 296, 304, 323
\__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n .....
    ..... 21, 21, 174, 336
\__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn .....
    ..... 231, 279, 284, 329
\__tag_mc_handle_stash:n .... 41,
    131, 131, 153, 179, 285, 285, 295, 340
\__tag_mc_if_in: .. 59, 59, 73, 218, 225
\__tag_mc_if_in:TF .. 67, 144, 152, 218
\__tag_mc_if_in_p: ..... 218
\__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n ...
    ..... 101, 101, 164
\__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n ...
    ..... 101, 146, 165
\__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n ...
    ..... 122, 122, 138, 146
\__tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_-
    kids:n ..... 122, 127, 147
\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl .....
    ..... 17, 171, 174, 255, 332, 333, 336, 388
\l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl ...
    ..... 17, 162, 211, 224, 225,
    241, 242, 331, 366, 375, 376, 385, 386
\l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool .....
    ..... 15, 24, 33, 104, 177, 338
\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl .....
    ..... 17, 19, 194, 197, 203, 312, 352, 362
\l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl .....
    ..... 17,
    166, 168, 193, 202, 328, 330, 332, 361
\__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n
    ..... 74, 74, 98, 168
\__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_-
    attr: ..... 74, 100, 192
\g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq .....
\g__tag_mc_marks .....
    ..... 10,
    18, 27, 40, 47, 58, 64, 81, 84, 190, 210
\g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq ... 11
\g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop .....
    ..... 12, 13, 83, 96, 148, 291
\l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl .....
    ..... 8, 234, 246, 254, 262
\__tag_mc_set_label_used:n 25, 25, 42
\g__tag_mc_stack_seq 13, 69, 76, 86, 166
\__tag_mc_store:nnn .. 86, 86, 100, 127
\l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl .. 9, 248, 251, 255
g__tag_MCID_abs_int .....
\g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop .....
    ..... 6, 244, 253, 261
\g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int .....
    ..... 10, 114, 251, 259, 272
\g__tag_mode_lua_bool ... 29, 30,
    31, 69, 133, 155, 181, 192, 251, 298, 311
\__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n
    ..... 57, 67, 76, 451
__tag_pairs_prop .....
\g__tag_para_begin_int .....
    ..... 202, 214, 218, 240, 245
\l__tag_para_bool .....
    ..... 200, 206, 212, 226, 274, 275, 297
\g__tag_para_end_int .....
    ..... 203, 228, 232, 240, 246
\g__tag_para_int .....
\l__tag_para_show_bool .....
    ..... 200, 207, 216, 230
\__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn ...
    ..... 60, 60, 274
\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl ...
    ..... 67, 86, 98, 112, 120, 140, 143
\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl 59, 62, 140
__tag_pdf_object_ref .....
\__tag_prop_gput:Nnn 9, 23, 34, 38,
    79, 86, 131, 133, 140, 180, 186, 197,
    252, 260, 303, 309, 322, 334, 346,

```

```

358, 365, 378, 385, 390, 401, 402,
421, 432, 437, 457, 482, 543, 617, 662
\__tag_prop_item:Nn ... 9, 43, 131, 136
\__tag_prop_new:N ..... 7,
8, 9, 9, 10, 12, 75, 131, 131, 142, 450
\__tag_prop_show:N 9, 56, 131, 138, 145
\__tag_ref_label:nn .....
..... 23, 115, 115, 121, 265, 466
\__tag_ref_value:nnn .....
..... 33, 78, 82, 96, 97, 116, 122,
122, 126, 229, 236, 240, 535, 541, 544
\__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn ...
..... 57, 71, 74, 127, 127, 208, 222
\c__tag_refmc_clist .....
79
\c__tag_refstruct_clist .....
79
g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict .....
391
\__tag_role_add_tag:nn ...
..... 392, 392, 415, 421, 492
\__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn ...
..... 425, 425, 447, 497
\__tag_role_NS_new:nnn ...
..... 111, 15, 15, 57, 58, 59, 61
\g__tag_role_NS_prop ...
..... 10, 39, 189, 207, 307, 480
\l__tag_role_role_namespace_-
tmpa_t1 .....
11,
453, 473, 478, 480, 482, 486, 501
\l__tag_role_role_tmpa_t1 ...
..... 11, 452, 471, 477, 494, 500
\c__tag_role_sttags_mathml_clist
.....
63, 377
\c__tag_role_sttags_only_pdf_-
clist .....
63, 365
\c__tag_role_sttags_only_pdfII_-
clist .....
63, 370
\c__tag_role_sttags_pdf_pdfII_-
clist .....
63, 360
\c__tag_role_sttags_pdfII_to_-
pdf_prop .....
63, 419
\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_-
tl .....
11, 451, 499
\l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_t1 ...
..... 11, 450, 470, 493, 498
\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop 9, 175,
299, 363, 368, 373, 380, 405, 436, 476
\g__tag_role_tags_prop ...
... 6, 95, 130, 358, 385, 394, 401, 432
\g__tag_role_tags_seq ...
..... 6, 357, 362, 367,
372, 379, 383, 387, 400, 403, 431, 434
\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str ...
..... 110, 41, 61
\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool 294, 303, 316
\__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn .....
... 9, 30, 102, 107, 117, 131, 133,
134, 141, 362, 367, 372, 379, 400, 431
\__tag_seq_item:Nn ... 9, 38, 131, 135
\__tag_seq_new:N .....
... 7, 9, 9, 16, 77, 131, 132, 143, 452
\__tag_seq_show:N . 9, 49, 131, 137, 144
__tag_show_spacemark .....
342
\l__tag_showspaces_bool ...
17, 26, 67
__tag_space_chars_shipout .....
436
g__tag_struct_0_prop .....
75
\g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop ...
..... 10, 88, 89, 91, 94, 110
\l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool ...
..... 56, 296, 480
\__tag_struct_exchange_kid_-
command:N .....
142, 142, 152, 183
\__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n ...
..... 153, 153, 238
\__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN
..... 212, 212, 239
\__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn ...
..... 251, 251, 560
\l__tag_struct_key_label_tl ...
..... 55, 295, 464, 466
\__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_-
right:nn .....
90, 100, 113, 288
\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_-
right:nn .....
125, 125, 140, 265
\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_-
right:nn ...
115, 115, 124, 491, 539
g__tag_struct_kids_0_seq .....
75
\__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n ...
..... 90, 91, 94, 105
\g__tag_struct_objR_seq .....
9
\__tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn
..... 57, 57, 71
\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl .
..... 15, 22, 31, 62, 68, 74,
136, 144, 150, 289, 290, 293, 477,
489, 493, 494, 497, 513, 519, 540, 547
\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_-
tmpa_t1 .....
15, 259,
267, 279, 471, 486, 490, 492, 495, 498
\g__tag_struct_stack_seq ...
.. 11, 258, 470, 475, 478, 507, 511, 517
\c__tag_struct_StructElem_-
entries_seq .....
17
\c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_-
entries_seq .....
17
\g__tag_struct_tag_NS_t1 53, 301, 307
\g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq ...
..... 13, 174, 175, 476, 510, 524

```

\g__tag_struct_tag_tl . . . . .	100
. . . . . 53, 300, 302, 306, 476, 526	
\__tag_struct_write_obj:n . . . . .	11
. . . . . 42, 48, 234, 234	
\g__tag_tagunmarked_bool . . . . .	25
\l__tag_tmpa_box . . . . .	100
. . . . . 70, 164, 170, 171, 175, 186, 187	
\l__tag_tmpa_clist . . . . .	28
. . . . . 70, 595, 596, 629, 630	
\l__tag_tmpa_int . . . . .	46
\l__tag_tmpa_prop . . . . .	48
\l__tag_tmpa_seq . . . . .	46
. . . . . 70, 157, 158, 159, 161, 162, 163,	
164, 170, 299, 300, 301, 596, 597,	
605, 611, 613, 615, 630, 633, 635, 659	
\l__tag_tmpa_str . . . . .	27
. . . . . 70, 220, 225, 230, 237, 242,	
249, 318, 325, 330, 337, 342, 349,	
354, 361, 371, 376, 381, 386, 386, 393	
\l__tag_tmpa_tl . . . . .	274
. . . . . 33, 34,	
41, 70, 77, 84, 86, 88, 89, 91, 93, 94,	
96, 97, 100, 102, 111, 112, 144, 148,	
149, 156, 167, 174, 179, 206, 214,	
239, 244, 307, 312, 372, 375, 381,	
510, 511, 517, 519, 524, 526, 609, 620	
\l__tag_tmpb_box . . . . .	274
. . . . . 70, 165, 172, 173, 177, 179	
\l__tag_tmpb_seq . . . . .	274
\__tag_tree_fill_parenttree: . . . . .	605
. . . . . 68, 69, 138	
\__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree: . . . . .	138
\__tag_tree_write_classmap: . . . . .	118
. . . . . 118, 118, 135	
\__tag_tree_write_namespaces: . . . . .	154
. . . . . 154, 154, 217	
\__tag_tree_write_structelements: . . . . .	217
\__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot: . . . . .	220
. . . . . 32, 32, 220	
tag-namespace . . . . .	448
tag/struct/0 internal commands:	
__tag/struct/0 . . . . .	84
tag/tree/namespaces internal commands:	
__tag/tree/namespaces . . . . .	81
tag/tree/parenttree internal commands:	
__tag/tree/parenttree . . . . .	177
tag/tree/rolemap internal commands:	
__tag/tree/rolemap . . . . .	210
tagabspage . . . . .	210
tagmcabs . . . . .	293
\tagmcbegin . . . . .	25
\tagmcend . . . . .	25
\tagmcid . . . . .	11
\tagmcifin . . . . .	100
\tagmcifinTF . . . . .	25
\tagmcuse . . . . .	28
\tagpdfifluatexT . . . . .	11
\tagpdfifluatexTF . . . . .	46
\tagpdfifpdftexT . . . . .	46
\tagpdfifpdftexTF . . . . .	48
\tagpdfparaOff . . . . .	46
\tagpdfparaOn . . . . .	27
\tagpdfsetup . . . . .	27
\tagpdfsuppressmarks . . . . .	27
tagstruct . . . . .	276
\tagstructbegin . . . . .	100
\tagstructend . . . . .	180
tagstructobj . . . . .	181
\tagstructuse . . . . .	100
tagunmarked . . . . .	25
TEX and L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>•</sub> commands:	32
\@M . . . . .	172
\@auxout . . . . .	161
\@bsphack . . . . .	39
\@cclv . . . . .	117
\@esphack . . . . .	260
\@gobble . . . . .	119
\@kernel@after@foot . . . . .	24
\@kernel@after@head . . . . .	48
\@kernel@before@cclv . . . . .	290
\@kernel@before@foot . . . . .	288
\@kernel@before@footins . . . . .	257
\@kernel@before@head . . . . .	289
\@makecol . . . . .	255
\@maxdepth . . . . .	255
\@mult@ptagging@hook . . . . .	287
\@secondoftwo . . . . .	24
\c@page . . . . .	48
\count@ . . . . .	259
\mult@gfirstbox . . . . .	267
\mult@rightbox . . . . .	265
\page@sofar . . . . .	269
\process@cols . . . . .	264
tex commands:	
\tex_botmarks:D . . . . .	265
\tex_firstmarks:D . . . . .	84
\tex_kern:D . . . . .	81
\tex_marks:D . . . . .	177
\tex_splitbotmarks:D . . . . .	18
\tex_splifirstmarks:D . . . . .	40
\tex_splitfirstmarks:D . . . . .	47
\tex_splitmarks:D . . . . .	58
\tex_tiny:D . . . . .	64
\the . . . . .	210
\tiny . . . . .	190
\title . . . . .	259

<b>title-o</b> . . . . .	<i>73, 293</i>
<b>tl commands:</b>	
\c_space_tl	. . . . .
... 63, 64, 88, 89, 93, 95, 97, 104,	
143, 160, 205, 229, 259, 442, 612, 652	
\tl_clear:N	. . . . . 156, 162, 214, 372
\tl_gput_right:Nn	. . . . . 62
\tl_gset:Nn	. . . . . 74, 194,
203, 300, 301, 352, 362, 477, 519, 526	
\tl_if_empty:NTF	. . . . . 26, 34,
171, 171, 173, 308, 333, 463, 467, 473	
\tl_if_empty:nTF	. . . . . 34, 125, 408
\tl_if_eq:NNTF	. . . . . 252
\tl_if_eq:NnTF	. . . . . 88
\tl_if_exist:NTF	. . . . . 63
\tl_new:N	. . . . . 8,
9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18,	
19, 20, 27, 53, 54, 55, 59, 67, 70, 576	
\tl_put_left:Nn	. . . . . 288, 290
\tl_put_right:Nn	. . . . . 86,
98, 111, 140, 211, 222, 224, 225,	
241, 242, 255, 257, 262, 287, 289,	
366, 375, 375, 376, 385, 386, 650, 657	
\tl_set:Nn	. . . . . 33, 77, 109,
111, 113, 117, 120, 121, 125, 129,	
133, 137, 167, 193, 202, 206, 234,	
255, 361, 470, 471, 482, 486, 609, 631	
\tl_show:N	. . . . . 489, 490, 655, 661
\tl_tail:n	. . . . . 288
\tl_to_str:n	. . . . . 27, 39, 59
\tl_use:N	. . . . . 64
\l_tmpa_tl	. . . . . 118, 130, 466, 467, 469
<b>token commands:</b>	
\token_to_str:N	. . . . . 41, 259
tree-mcid-index-wrong	. . . . . 39
<b>U</b>	
\unskip	. . . . . 25, 19
<b>use commands:</b>	
\use:N	. . . . . 47, 277
\use_ii:nn	. . . . . 207
\use_none:n	. . . . . 43, 74
\use_none:nn	. . . . . 73
<b>V</b>	
\vbadness	. . . . . 161, 185
<b>vbox commands:</b>	
\vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn	. . . . . 187
\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn	. . . . . 163
\vbox_unpack_drop:N	. . . . . 176
\vfuzz	. . . . . 162